

*History of Sciences in India Publications*

# CARAKA SAMHITĀ

(A Scientific Synopsis)

By

PRIYADARANJAN RĀY, M.A., F.N.I.

and

HIRENDRA NATH GUPTA, M.Sc.



NATIONAL INSTITUTE OF SCIENCES OF INDIA  
NEW DELHI

*Published by*

THE NATIONAL INSTITUTE OF SCIENCES OF INDIA  
BAHADUR SHAH ZAFAR MARG, NEW DELHI 1.

COPY © RIGHT

1965

NATIONAL INSTITUTE OF SCIENCES OF INDIA

PRINTED IN INDIA  
SREE SARASWATY PRESS, CALCUTTA-9

## F O R E W O R D

The present monograph of *Caraka Saṃhitā* is the first of a series of studies being published by the National Institute of Sciences of India which in 1959 constituted a Board for the compilation of a History of Sciences in India. Several bibliographies and monographs are now ready and their publication will be taken up as and when funds become available.

The work of the Board has now been taken over by the National Commission for the History of Sciences in India, inaugurated on January 15, 1965, by Shri M. C. Chagla, the Union Minister of Education.

This monograph offers a scientifically classified account of the contents of *Caraka Saṃhitā*, one of the two earliest and most renowned medical treatises of ancient India. Of these two treatises, *Caraka Saṃhitā* and *Suśruta Saṃhitā*, dealing respectively with medicine and surgery in the main, *Caraka* is admittedly the more ancient, though both have passed through repeated recensions by later and more advanced workers. The significance of these treatises lies in the rational basis of their concepts and discourse, and in their adoption of scientific terminology.

No definite date, acceptable to all, could however be assigned as to the composition of *Caraka Saṃhitā*, though its antiquity is not generally challenged. The extant *Caraka* is a redaction by Dṛḍhabala of the genuine *Caraka Saṃhitā*, which was itself a redaction by Caraka of the original work of Agniveśa, a disciple of Ātreya Punarvasu—a teacher in the University of Taxila during the age of Buddha. Caraka has been identified by some scholars with a physician of the same name in the court of the Indo-Scythian king Kaniṣka, who reigned in the second century A.D. From a consideration of internal and external evidence many authorities are of opinion that *Caraka Saṃhitā* is more or less a record or compilation of the deliberations of a congress of medical experts in ancient India, held in the early Buddhistic era. Hence, the progress of scientific knowledge in ancient India, as recorded in the medical treatise of Caraka, the most celebrated of the early Indian authors on the subject, may be compared with that of contemporary Greece, as represented by the works of Hippocrates. It has, therefore, been assumed by some western scholars that the medical knowledge, as expounded by Caraka, betrays some acquaintance with the works of that Greek author, though they have failed to advance any convincing proof.

This synoptic survey is well documented and its authors have taken good care of avoiding all attempts at improving upon Caraka's concepts and views in order to give them an air of modernity, which often unfortunately occurs in the case of many modern publications on ancient texts. This will help ensuring a proper assessment of the standard of scientific knowledge prevailing in India during the time of Caraka. The work will, therefore, serve as a record of reliable source materials for the compilation of a history of Indian medicine. A similar survey of the contents of *Suśruta Saṃhitā* is now in progress. Students of medicine and pharmacology, particularly those interested in research, will find the publication quite useful. Moreover, it will contribute in no small measure towards the preparation of scientific terminology in Indian languages, so urgently needed at the present moment.

The Convener desires to express on behalf of the retiring Board its appreciation of the meticulous care and scholarship with which Prof. P. Rāy, with the assistance of Shri Hirendra Nath Gupta, has carried out the task. The monograph will be welcomed by a wide circle of interested readers.

I do confidently hope that the book will not fail to achieve the purpose it has in view.

D. M. Bose

*February 4, 1965*

*Convener*

## PREFACE

In the present work a synoptic survey of the *Caraka Saṃhitā*, a well-known medical treatise of ancient India, has been made. The concepts, processes, methods, and materials, which occur in the treatise in a scattered manner, interspersed with an abundance of metaphysical disquisitions and with frequent reference to Vedic gods and hymns, have been co-ordinated and systematized from a scientific point of view. Most of the materials have been arranged in tabular forms for ready reference and rapid survey. Wherever necessary, and as far as possible, both English and Latin equivalents of all Sanskrit names and terms have been supplied to avoid ambiguities in their identification.

This is possibly the first attempt at rendering in English on a scientific basis the salient features of the views and observations of Caraka in a classified manner in order to make them accessible to all those English-speaking scholars, who may not have time and opportunities to go through the original Sanskrit text, or its English translations that are available. We would like to acknowledge here the valuable help we have received from these translations.

A proper assessment of the standard of scientific knowledge, particularly of medical science, acquired by the ancient Indians at a time prior to Galen, if not even much earlier as upheld by some scholars, is thus likely to be facilitated. Students of medicine and pharmacology, interested in research work, are also expected to find this publication particularly useful for their purpose.

In preparing this synopsis we have made use of the following editions of the text, and have consulted the available commentaries and translations.

1. *Jalpakalpataru*, the complete text of *Caraka Saṃhitā*, edited by Kaviraja Gangadhara with commentary; Vols. I-III. Second Edition; Calcutta, 1880-81.
2. *Caraka Saṃhitā*, complete text with Cakrapāṇi's commentary; edited by Harinātha Viśārada, Calcutta, 1892.
3. *Caraka Saṃhitā*, edited by Shree Gulabkunverba Ayurvedic Society, with introduction, commentary and indices including English, Hindi and Gujarati translations; Vols. I-VI. Jamnagar, 1949.
4. *Caraka Saṃhitā* (*Agniveśa Saṃhitā* as revised by Caraka and Dr̥ḍhabala), with *Āyurveda Dīpikā*, the commentary of Cakrapāṇi Datta; edited by Vaidya Jādavaji Trikamji Āchārya; third edition. Nirnaya Sagar Press, Bombay, 1941.

References in the present work to the chapters and verses in the original text follow the numberings given in the two last named publications.

For botanical and zoological names the following authoritative works served as the principal source of our information:

1. *Flora of British India* by J. B. Hooker, Vols. I-VII. London, 1872-1897.
2. *Pharmacographica Indica* by W. Dymock *et al.*, Vols. I-IV. London, Bombay, and Calcutta, 1893.
3. *Indian Medicinal Plants* by R. N. Chopra, Patna, 1932.
4. *The Fauna of British India* (including Ceylon, and Burma). Taylor and Francis; London, 1949.
5. *Sanskrit-English Dictionary* by M. Monier-Williams. Oxford, 1951.

In spite of all our precautions, we are quite conscious of the possibility of mistakes and errors, still occurring in this synopsis, and we shall be thankful to our readers for bringing them to our notice, if they happen to find any.

The following abbreviations have been used:

*Sū.*—*Sūtrasthāna*, *Ni.*—*Nidānasthāna*, *Vi.*—*Vimānasthāna*, *Śā.*—*Śārirasthāna*, *In.*—*Indriyasthāna*, *Ci.*—*Cikitsāsthāna*, *Ka.*—*Kalpasthāna*, *Si.*—*Siddhisthāna*.

We take this opportunity of expressing our grateful thanks to Pandit N. C. Vedantatirtha of the Asiatic Society for his kindly going through the final proof and verifying the Sanskrit names and terms. Our thanks are also due to Mrs. S. Mitra, Sub-editor, National Institute of Sciences of India, for her ungrudging assistance in reading the proofs and in seeing the work through the press. We must also express our great appreciation for all facilities we have received from the authorities of the Asiatic Society for working in their library. Finally, we wish to acknowledge our thankfulness to Dr. D. M. Bose, Convener, for his keen interest in the work, carried out under the auspices of the National Institute of Sciences of India. Above all, we consider it our bounden duty to offer our grateful thanks to Dr. A. C. Ukil who, as the President of the N.I.S.I., took the main initiative in organizing the scheme for compiling a History of Sciences in India and, as the first convener of its Board, evinced a great interest in our work with all possible encouragement and help.

We would also like to record here our appreciation of the patient co-operation of Sree Saraswaty Press Ltd., Calcutta, in bringing out this publication.

P. RAY  
H. N. GUPTA

## C O N T E N T S

	P A G E
<b>FOREWORD</b> .. . . .	iii
<b>PREFACE</b> .. . . .	v
<b>I. AUTHORSHIP AND DATE OF COMPOSITION</b> .. .	1
<b>II. SCOPE AND SUB-DIVISIONS OF THE TREATISE</b> ..	4
<b>III. CONCEPTS AND THEORIES</b> .. . . .	5—13
(a) Man and Matter; Aim of Medical Science .. .	5
(b) Conception and Birth .. . .	7
(c) Heredity and Embryonic Growth .. . .	8
(d) Humoral Theory (Concept of the Origin of Diseases) .. .	10
(e) <i>Vāyu</i> and its Role in Human System and in Nature .. .	12
(f) Memory and Dream .. . .	12
(g) Ethics in Caraka .. . .	12
<b>IV. PHYSIOLOGICAL PROCESSES</b> .. . . .	13—16
(a) Digestion and Metabolism .. . .	13
(b) Movement of Fluids through Channels of the Human Body .. . . .	14
(c) Tastes .. . . .	15
<b>V. HEALTH AND LONGEVITY</b> .. . . .	16—20
(a) Personal Hygiene .. . .	16
(b) Effects of Environment on Health .. . .	17
(c) Nutrition and Diet .. . .	18
(d) Rejuvenation .. . .	19
(e) Public Sanitation .. . .	20
<b>VI. PHYSICIANS IN CARAKA</b> .. . . .	20
<b>VII. DIAGNOSIS OF DISEASES</b> .. . . .	21
<b>VIII. METHODS OF TREATMENT, INCLUDING SURGERY</b> ..	23

<b>IX. POISONS .. .. .. ..</b>	<b>24</b>
<b>X. PHYSICOCHEMICAL PROCESSES .. ..</b>	<b>25</b>
<b>XI. CLASSIFICATIONS .. .. ..</b>	<b>26</b>
<b>XII. TABLES (1—20) .. .. .. ..</b>	<b>30—119</b>
1. Living Creatures .. .. .. ..	30
2. Medicinal Substances of Animal Origin and their Uses ..	38
3. Medicinal Plants and Plant Products, and their Uses ..	52
4. Medicinal Substances of Mineral Origin and their Uses ..	78
5. Cereals and Legumes .. .. .. ..	86
6. Natural Waters .. .. .. ..	86
7. Sugarcane Derivatives and Types of Honey ..	87
8. Milk and Milk-products .. .. .. ..	88
9. Vegetable Oils .. .. .. ..	89
10. Alcoholic Beverages .. .. .. ..	90
11. Anatomical Terms .. .. .. ..	91
(A) General .. .. .. ..	91
(B) Bones in the Human Body .. .. .. ..	95
12. Physiological Terms .. .. .. ..	97
13. Diseases .. .. .. ..	99
14. Pathological Conditions and Congenital Defects ..	108
15. Therapeutical, Surgical, and Chemical Terms ..	112
16. Apparatus and Appliances .. .. .. ..	114
17. Terms for Physicochemical Processes .. .. .. ..	115
18. Mechanical and Physical Terms .. .. .. ..	117
19. Weights and Measures .. .. .. ..	118
20. Terms for Physical Properties .. .. .. ..	119
<b>XIII. BIBLIOGRAPHY .. .. .. ..</b>	<b>120</b>

## I. AUTHORSHIP AND DATE OF COMPOSITION

The *Caraka Saṃhitā* (literally, treatise compiled by Caraka) is a Sanskrit work of great antiquity. Though primarily a compendium on “Āyurveda” (science of life), the philosophical concepts and views that form a considerable part of the *Caraka Saṃhitā*, serving, as it were, as the background of knowledge and practice of medicine in ancient India, must be considered an integral part of the work.

It is difficult, if not altogether impossible, to fix an exact date for its composition, or even to identify its author with any certainty. The only text available at present is a redaction by Dṛḍhabala of the 9th century A.D., who repeatedly mentioned in the body of the text that he merely edited an ancient work of this name, restoring and reconstructing some missing passages. In fact, a major portion of the last book of the *Saṃhitā*, ‘Siddhisthāna’, was added by him.

The text gives a detailed account of how the *Caraka Saṃhitā* was originally composed. A conference of sages, meeting somewhere in the Himalayas, with the common object of alleviating human suffering and assuring a long, healthy and satisfying life to all, decided to take all steps to acquire the necessary knowledge for that purpose (*Sū. Chap. 1*). Later, one of these sages, Ātreya Punarvasu by name, requested six of his disciples to compile his teachings in writing (*Sū. Chap. 2*). The treatise of Agniveśa was considered the best, and the *Saṃhitā* of Agniveśa, revised by Caraka at some later date, formed the basis of Dṛḍhabala’s edition. In fact, the major portion of *Caraka Saṃhitā* is presented in the form of questions and answers between the disciple Agniveśa and his teacher Ātreya.

There is no reason why this account, as far as the sequence of authorship is concerned, should not be accepted as correct. Cakrapāṇi Datta (11th century) in his commentary *Āyurvedadīpikā* on *Caraka Saṃhitā* practically asserted the identity of the latter with the original *Agniveśa Saṃhitā*, of which he seemed to have a full knowledge.

A great deal of difficulty is however encountered, when we try to identify Ātreya, Agniveśa, and Caraka with authors of the same names mentioned in Brāhmaṇical, Buddhistic, Chinese and Arabic literatures. Some of these names are found to occur as early as the Vedic period (2nd millennium B.C.) and some as late as the early centuries of the Christian era. It had been a common practice in India, for scholars of lesser fame to assume the titles of their more renowned predecessors in their particular fields with a view to fixing a stamp of authority on their own works. This fact introduces an element of uncertainty in any tentative chronology.

Most of the hymns of the fifth Maṇḍala of the *R̥gveda* are attributed to Atri, or to Ātreya. Again, Ātreya is the name of a famous medical teacher at Taxila, who, according to many Buddhistic and Chinese texts, was the preceptor of Jivaka, the personal physician of Gautama Buddha (6th century B.C.). But the Ātreya of *Caraka Saṃhitā* is Ātreya Punarvasu, son of Candrabhāga (*Sū. 13*, 99), whereas no Vedic text, Buddhistic source or Chinese work even mentions the title Punarvasu, or the parentage. The *Caraka Saṃhitā* itself makes a mention of yet another Ātreya (*Sū. 1*, 9). Nowhere does it mention Taxila as Ātreya's place of residence. On the contrary, Punarvasu Ātreya is described as taking a walk in Kāmpilya, a city on the river Ganges (*Vi. 3*, 3). Though the possibility of an excursion, or of migration, cannot be ruled out, there is nothing to support his identity with the teacher of Jivaka, except the surname Ātreya, which is derived from the name Atri and means a descendant or follower of Atri. The identification of the author of *Caraka Saṃhitā* with the teacher at Taxila, made by Rudolf Hoernle (*Bower Manuscript*, Introduction, p. lviii), is not based therefore on any convincing evidence.

As for Agniveśa, the *Mahābhārata* refers to one Agniveśa as receiving the knowledge of *dhanurvidyā* (science of archery) from Bharadvāja (Ādiparva, slokas 5107 and 5108), whereas in the *Caraka Saṃhitā* Agniveśa is merely a disciple of Ātreya, who in his turn received his knowledge of Āyurveda also from one Bharadvāja (*Sū. Chap. 1*). Here again an identification would be hazardous.

The Chinese text of *Tripiṭaka* names one Tehc lo kia (i.e., Caraka in Sanskrit) as a trusted physician in the court of the king Kaṇiṣka (c. 200 A.D.) in the north-west of India. This Caraka has been identified by Sylvain Lévi (Notes sur les Indo-Scythes in *J.A.* 1896, pp. 451-480) and by Hoernle (*Studies in the Medicine of Ancient India*. Part I, p. 9) with the author of the *Caraka Saṃhitā*. Here again, the identification is far from convincing; for, the name and title of Caraka (literally, a wanderer) has been found in many places and contexts in ancient Indian literature and is, in fact, associated with a particular school of medical knowledge. Reference to this is found in the *Black Yajurveda* (L. Renou, *Écoles Védique*, p. 129, 144, etc.). The *Taittiriya Saṃhitā*, known to be a work dating from more than a thousand years before the Christian era, also speaks about the Caraka School of medicine, though not in complimentary terms (*Taittiriya Saṃhitā*, VI, 4, 9). It is more than possible that all subsequent Carakas, including the court-physician of Kaṇiṣka, were later exponents of this medical school, and centuries might have elapsed between any two holders of this name or title.

From passages in Cakrapāṇi Datta's *Āyurvedadīpikā* and in Śivadāsa Sena's commentary on the latter work (12th century A.D.), it appears that Patañjali, the famous grammarian (c. 2nd century B.C.) and a great alchemist, also revised *Caraka Saṃhitā*. If these are to be believed, Caraka cannot by any

stretch of imagination be placed in the court of Kaniska three or four centuries later.

It is therefore extremely difficult to give any definite date when Ātreya, Agniveśa or Caraka of our text might have flourished.

P. C. Rāy (*History of Hindu Chemistry*, Vol. I, Introduction, pp. xiii—xxiii) after considering all internal and relevant evidence places the date of composition of *Caraka Saṃhitā* in the pre-Buddhistic period, i.e., before 600 B.C. His arguments are summarized below.

1. The text of Caraka is written in a haphazard and unsystematic style, intermingled with metaphysical disquisitions in sharp contrast with the precise style of works composed in the Buddhistic and later periods.

2. Vedic gods and *mantras* occur repeatedly, but references to Paurāṇic mythology and Buddhistic scriptures are conspicuous by their absence.

3. Caraka follows Vedic texts in counting the number of bones (360) in the human body, and in assuming the age of thirty as the limit of man's youth.

4. The prose style of Caraka resembles that of the Brāhmaṇas of the Vedas.

5. The treatise appears to be a record of the deliberations of Vedic ṛṣis, often giving their discussions in full (vide discourse on tastes, *Sū. Chap. 26*) and clearly mentions that it was composed shortly after those deliberations.

6. Patañjali (2nd century B.C.) is known to have made a redaction of the *Caraka Saṃhitā*.

Jean Filliozat (*La Doctrine classique de la Médecine Indienne*, pp. 17-19) also believes that significant references found in the text, the stage of development of the language employed, and careful comparison with other works of established dates, can give a more reliable idea of the date of composition than the names and dates of supposed authors. He, however, considers the style and composition definitely post-Vedic and having considerable affinity with the *Arthaśāstra* of Kauṭilya (3rd century B.C.). According to him, the *Caraka Saṃhitā* was composed in a period which antedates the Christian era, but not by a very long period. He gives the 2nd or 1st century B.C. as the most probable date.

Some workers (Filliozat, *loc. cit.*, and Gananath Sen, *Pratyakṣa Śārīram* Vol. I, 8-11) have identified Caraka with Patañjali, but the evidence in support of this view is not very convincing.

Winternitz (*History of Indian Literature*, part I) assigns 100 A.D. as the approximate date of *Caraka Saṃhitā*, and the Chronology Committee of the National Institute of Sciences of India (*Proceedings*, 1952) after considering all available evidence adopted this date for the text, which formed the basis of Dṛḍhabala's redaction.

## II. SCOPE AND SUB-DIVISIONS OF THE TREATISE

*Caraka Samhitā* is primarily an exposition of Āyurveda, the science of life, defined as the science of the causes and symptoms of diseases, of their medication, and of the maintenance of health (*Sū. 1, 23*). It also deals with the origin of medical science, the fundamental causes of conception and birth, and of physical deformities. According to Caraka, life is everlasting and without any beginning. Āyurveda, the science of life, has also been always in existence (*Sū. 30, 27*).

The treatise contains a detailed classification and nomenclature of diseases—their etiology, diagnosis, prognosis and treatment. Embryology, obstetrics, anatomy, physiology, personal hygiene, sanitation, training and duties of physicians, and other theoretical and practical aspects of medicine are also treated in some detail. Interspersed in the text are passages which give valuable indications of the cosmological, biological, physicochemical, metaphysical, ethical and philosophical ideas prevalent in India at the time.

According to Caraka, Āyurveda has got eight branches (*Sū. 30, 30*) :

- (1) *Kāyacikitsā*, therapeutics.
- (2) *Śalakya*, the science of the special diseases of the eye, ear, nose, mouth, throat, etc.
- (3) *Śalyāpahartṛka*, surgery.
- (4) *Viṣagavaravairodhikapraśamana*, toxicology.
- (5) *Bhūtavidyā*, psychiatric knowledge.
- (6) *Kaumārabhṛtya*, pediatrics.
- (7) *Rasāyana*, rejuvenation.
- (8) *Vājikaraṇa*, knowledge for increasing virility.

The *Caraka Samhitā* is an exhaustive compendium on therapeutic medicine and claims to contain all that is to be known in this branch (*Si. 12, 53*), though it contains sections devoted to the other seven branches.

The scope of the treatise is stated to be limited to ten specific topics (*Sū. 30, 32*):

- (i) *Sarīra*, anatomy.
- (ii) *Vṛtti*, physiology.
- (iii) *Hetu*, etiology.
- (iv) *Vyādhi*, pathology.
- (v) *Karma*, treatment.
- (vi) *Kārya*, objectives.
- (vii) *Kāla*, the influence of age and seasons.
- (viii) *Kartṛ*, physicians.
- (ix) *Karanya*, medicines and appliances.
- (x) *Vidhiviniścaya*, procedure and sequence.

For a discussion of the above topics the treatise is divided into eight sections (*Sū. 30*, 35):

- (1) *Sūtrasthāna* deals with general principles, philosophy, etc.
- (2) *Nidānasthāna* deals with causes of diseases.
- (3) *Vimānasthāna* deals with taste, nourishment, general pathology, etc.
- (4) *Śārirasthāna* deals with anatomy and embryology.
- (5) *Indriyasthāna* deals with diagnosis and prognosis.
- (6) *Cikitsāsthāna* deals with treatment of diseases.
- (7) *Kalpasthāna* deals with pharmacy.
- (8) *Siddhisthāna* deals with cure of diseases.

In all, there are one hundred and fifty chapters on specific topics. There are at places some later revisions or interpolations, as repeatedly admitted by the redactor at the end of each and every chapter. In fact, Drḍhabala states that he had to rewrite and complete the last section *Siddhisthāna* from the materials available to him (*Si. 12*, 55). The twelfth or last chapter of this section was not available at all and had to be restored by him in order to complete the treatise (*Si. 12*, last *śloka*).

### III. CONCEPTS AND THEORIES

#### (a) MAN AND MATTER : AIM OF MEDICAL SCIENCE

Man, according to Caraka, is an epitome of the macrocosm (*Śā. 5*, 3). Following the philosophical doctrines of Sāṃkhya and Vedānta, Caraka holds (*Śā. Chap. 5*) that the individual is a replica of the universal; both the external world and the individual man are the manifestations of one and the same eternal spirit (*Brahman*). In other words, spirit and matter are not two separate entities but one integral whole. Both man and the visible world are composed of six elements. *Pṛthvī* (earth), *ap* (water or liquid), *tejas* (fire), *vāyu* (air) and *ākāśa* (ether) are common to both. The sixth element, the spirit or self in the individual, is equivalent to *Brahman* in the universe (*Śā. 5*, 4). *Pṛthvī* confers hardness, *ap* confers fluid constituents, *tejas* the body-heat, *vāyu* the vital breath, *ākāśa* the bodily orifices, and *Brahman* the spirit (*Śā. 5*, 5). Similar to the office of the creator in the universe is the might of the individual soul in man. He also creates life by the act of impregnation (*Śā. 5*, 6). Like the diverse things present in the universe, the different entities comprising the human being are too numerous to count (*Śā. 5*, 4). There is in man as much diversity as in the world outside (*Śā. 5*, 3).

The human body is made up of innumerable minute parts which, because of their extreme fineness, are invisible and not amenable to sense perception. These may be compared to the cells of the body, as we now understand (*Śā. 7*, 17).

According to Caraka there are four criteria of truth: (a) authoritative

testimony, (b) direct observation, (c) logical assumption, (d) inference. Anything contrary to reason is to be rejected as untruth, (*Sū. 11*, 17, 26-28). To this might also be added (e) tradition and (f) analogy (*Vi. 8*, 33).

The realization of truth or perfect knowledge by man arises from the sense of equality, i.e., from the perception of his own self as identified with everything else in the universe (*Śā. 5*, 7), or from the perception of the unity of the whole world (*Śā. 5*, 8). The purpose of life is the attainment of liberation, or emancipation of the soul, which consists in the understanding and realization of truth, leading to eternal peace. This cannot be achieved merely by rituals, ceremonial practices, keeping up the sacred fire, invocations, mendicancy, austerities, asceticism, etc. (*Śā. 5*, 10).

A sound mind and a sound body were regarded as prerequisites for the beatific experience of the Divine or *Brahman* in man. The aim and object of the study and pursuit of medical science with this end in view was thus defined in the *Caraka Samhitā* (*Śā. 5*, 10). For, it serves as an aid to the fulfilment of fourfold purposes of life, namely, *dharma* (performance of duties), *artha* (acquisition of wealth), *kāma* (satisfaction of desires), and *mokṣa* (salvation or self-realization) (*Sū. 1*, 15-16).

Life, according to Caraka, can be divided into four types: *sukhamāyuh* (happy life) is a life not affected by physical or mental diseases; *asukhamāyuh* (unhappy life) is the opposite of this; *hitamāyuh* (good life) is a virtuous life devoted to the service and welfare of others; *ahitamāyuh* (bad life) is the opposite of this. The object of the science of life is to provide information about what tends to develop all these four kinds of life and to determine their span (*Sū. 30*, 23-24).

All matter is composed of the five *mahābhūtas* (gross elements): *ākāśa* (vacuum or ether), *vāyu* (gas or air), *tejas* (radiant energy), *ap* (liquid or water) and *prthvi* (solid or earth substance) (*Śā. 1*, 27). The gross *bhūtas* show five subtle characteristics: non-resistance, motion, heat, fluidity and hardness. *Ākāśa* has the sole quality of non-resistance. In each succeeding element there is found the preceding element or elements with their characteristic properties, as well as its own specific quality (*Śā. 1*, 27-29).

Living things are composed of the *mahābhūtas* and three other constituents: *avyakta* (*ātman* or unmanifest self), *buddhi* (intelligence) and *ahamkāra* (ego). Thus they have the eight-fold *prakṛti* (natural characteristics) (*Śā. 1*, 63). The ego is made up of action, the consequences of action, reincarnation and memory, and is independent of the physical body. It can exist without the latter (*Śā. 1*, 52).

The five *mahābhūtas*, together with the spirit, mind, time and space, constitute the totality of all substances (*Sū. 1*, 48). They are perceptible to the senses or to the mind (*Sū. 1*, 62). But they cannot exist singly or without purpose; being ephemeral by nature they cannot escape destruction (*Śā. 1*, 58).

Of the substances, those which possess sense-organs are called animate, and those which do not are called inanimate. The *guṇas* represent the sense properties of colour, taste, smell, touch, and hearing, besides the mechanical and other properties which all elements have in common (*Sū. 1*, 48-50).

All senses are mere variations of the five *mahābhūtas*, but each sense partakes of one *mahābhūta* in a preponderating degree and possesses a special capacity for grasping that particular *mahābhūta* (*Sū. 8*, 14).

Conscious perception arises from the fusion of the *ātman*, mind, senses and sense-objects (*Śā. 1*, 34). This fusion cannot be achieved by accident; an agent is necessary (*Śā. 1*, 44). The ultimate source of consciousness and knowledge is the *Puruṣa* or transcendent self (*Śā. 1*, 41). The *Puruṣa* has no beginning in time; it is not manifest to the senses, cannot be realized except by inference and does not come under any known category (*Śā. 1*, 60 and 62). It is everlasting, all-pervading and changeless (*Śā. 1*, 61). Had there been no *Puruṣa* there would have been neither good nor evil, no knowledge, no doer and no knower (*Śā. 1*, 39). All these would be causeless. Neither could there be any awareness of these, nor would they serve any purpose by their existence (*Śā. 1*, 42). There would have been no dissolution nor creation, no birth nor death, no continuity of life, no consciousness nor perception, no pleasure nor pain, no dynamic nor static condition, no science nor scripture, no bondage nor liberation, if there were no *Puruṣa* (*Śā. 1*, 38-41).

Caraka holds that life results from the combination of the body, the senses, the mind and the self (*ātman*), and that it rests on the body, the mind and the self, as on a tripod. If, therefore, any of these supports be missing, life ceases to exist (*Sū. 1*, 42, 46). As already stated, transcendent self (*parah ātmā*) is different from manifest self which participates in the union of the body, mind and the senses (*Sū. 1*, 41, 45, 47, 55, 56).

#### (b) CONCEPTION AND BIRTH

There are four different origins of living beings: womb, egg, sweat, and the seed. Each of these classes shows countless varieties. The viviparous and oviparous embryos assume the shape of such wombs as they find themselves in, though they originate from a complex of causative factors (*Śā. 3*, 16).

Conception occurs inside the womb by the union of semen, ovum and the spirit (*Śā. 4*, 5). By the physical act of mating union takes place between the semen (sperm cell) and the female ovum (germ cell); then the spirit, associated with the mind, descends and enters into the zygote formed, and a new embryonic life is created (*Śā. 3*, 2). If the spirit does not descend, no life is created and conception fails to occur (*Śā. 3*, 11). The conscious spirit gravitates to the needed ingredients; it creates its own body by gathering the elements together—first the *ākāśa* (ether) alone, then in due order the other *bhūtas*. The process is completed in an infinitely small fraction of time (*Śā. 4*, 8).

The conception of all living beings originates from the combined contribution of the mother, the father, the spirit, the essence of the elemental properties and nourishment (*Śā. 3, 3*). It is the mind which yokes the living organism to the spirit and holds the senses together. With the departure of the mind, the organism becomes a lifeless matter (*Śā. 3, 13*).

The spirit in the embryo is the embodied soul. The soul is eternal, diseaseless, decayless, ageless, deathless, indivisible, indestructible, immovable, omniform, omnifunctional, immutable, invisible and infinite (*Śā. 3, 8*).

Hence, there is no birth in the true sense. What we call birth is the mere transition of the already existing sperm, ovum and spirit to the new status of embryo after their union (*Śā. 3, 8*). The spirit is the eternal self and passes through a succession of forms, having no beginning. Life and the spirit, both are without beginning and neither is antecedent to the other (*Śā. 1, 82*).

#### (c) HEREDITY AND EMBRYONIC GROWTH

Caraka assumes that the sperm-cell (*bija*) of the male parent contains minute elements derived from each of his organs and tissues (*Śā. 4, 7*). A rational explanation is attempted of the fact that offsprings do not necessarily reproduce every feature of the father, and even a particular womb does not produce identical features in every embryo conceived in it.

A human womb invariably produces a human child in the manner of a wax-mould (*Śā. 3, 16*), but children differ in many important respects from their parents (*Śā. 3, 17*). They may be males or females, twins, multiplets (*Śā. 2, 11*), possessed of sexual abnormalities (*Śā. 2, 31*) and may have individual characteristics and deformities (*Śā. 2, 28-29*).

When the sperm (*sukra*) is dominant, a male foetus is formed, but a female is produced when the female germ (*śonita*) predominates (*Śā. 2, 12*). If the united sperm-ovum gets divided into two or more fragments, a corresponding number of new lives are created (*Śā. 2, 14*). In this case a male is formed from a fragment rich in sperm and female from one rich in ovum (*Śā. 2, 13*). Non-identical twins or multiplets result from unequal fragments (*Śā. 2, 16*). Indeterminate sex and abnormalities occur when neither the sperm nor the ovum predominates, or when they are diseased and weak (*Śā. 2, 18-21*).

Caraka also attempts to explain why congenital deformities of the parents, or constitutional diseases contracted by them in later life, are not necessarily inherited. According to Ātreya's view given in the text (*Śā. 3, 15*), the parental *bija* (seed or germ-plasm) contains the whole parental organism in a potential or miniature form but is independent of the parents' developed organs, and is not necessarily affected by their idiosyncrasies or deformities. It is the combination and characters of the constituent elements of the parental *bija*, which is an organic entity independent of the developed parental body and its organs, that determine the physiological features and predispositions

of the embryo. Congenital defects like blindness, deafness, dumbness, stammering, lameness, deformity of the spinal column or the bony framework, as well as constitutional diseases like madness, leprosy or chronic skin diseases in the parent, do not necessarily produce corresponding deformities or infirmities in the offspring. Only when an element in the parental *bija*, representing a particular organ or tissue accidentally (*daiva*) happens to be defective, undeveloped, or abnormal, the corresponding organ or tissue of the offspring will be similarly affected. Again when constitutional diseases, acquired in later life, are found to be inherited, it is supposed that the *bija* has been infected or affected in that particular instance. Leprosy, for example, is transmitted to the offspring only when the germ-plasm is actually infected with the disease by reason of the leprosy of the parent (*Śā. 3*, 15). This mutual interaction of the germ-plasm and the somatic tissues seems to be a distinctive feature of Ātreyā's hypothesis. The continued identity of the germ-plasm from generation to generation, affected by somatic processes only by accident or infection, follows logically from this hypothesis.

Hence offsprings differ from their parents in those tissues and organs whose original representatives in the germ-plasm have been affected by causative factors. The sex, stature and complexion of the offspring is also stated to be affected by the influence of abundant or defective nutrition and by the constituents of foods taken by the parents (*Śā. 3*, 5).

The elements that contribute to the general features of the new-born child are: (1) the mother's blood, (2) the father's semen, and (3) the *karma* of the individual. Its mental traits are determined by the state of the mind of the individual in its previous birth, and will be impure and dull if it was an animal in the previous birth (*Śā. 2*, 27).

The embryo inherits its skin, blood, flesh, fat, heart, liver, lungs, spleen, kidneys, stomach, intestines, etc. from its mother (*Śā. 3*, 6); its bones, teeth, veins, tendons, ligaments, arteries, semen, hair and nails from its father (*Śā. 3*, 7); its mind, senses, consciousness, ego, memory and life-span from the spirit (*Śā. 3*, 10); its clarity of senses, quality of voice, appetite and vitality from parental concordance (*Śā. 3*, 11); its visible shape, vigour, sense of contentment and energy from nourishment (*Śā. 3*, 12).

The embryo is a shapeless jelly (*khetabhuṭa*) in the first month (*Śā. 4*, 9) and a tumour-like or fleshy shape in the second. By this time there is the first indication of the future sex of the embryo (*Śā. 4*, 10). In the third month the limbs and sense-organs are no longer latent but emerge as separate entities (*Śā. 4*, 11). In the fourth month, the foetus is stabilized and the mother puts on weight (*Śā. 4*, 20). It grows in flesh and blood in the fifth month and in strength and colour in the sixth, at the expense of the mother who becomes emaciated, weak and pale (*Śā. 4*, 21-22). In the seventh month there is an all-round development and in the eighth there is a continuous flow of

vitality to and from the mother (*Sā. 4*, 23-24). It continues to grow by nourishment until delivery, which should occur in the ninth or tenth month (*Sā. 4*, 25). Any factor which upsets the proper sequence leads to an abnormal period of gestation, or destruction of the foetus (*Sā. 4*, 59).

The first stage of foetal development has been assumed differently by different experts in the discourse given in the *Caraka Samhitā* (*Sā. 6*, 21).

The child in the womb has its limbs folded, its head erect and its back towards the mother's abdomen (*Sā. 6*, 22). Its heart is connected with the mother's heart through the umbilical cord and the placenta; the latter is flooded with blood by the pulsating arteries of the mother. The mother's blood transmits nourishment, vitality, and complexion. The skin-pores of the foetus also absorb the nourishment (*Sā. 6*, 23). The two minds (of the mother and the foetus) have an intimate psychical connection (*Sā. 4*, 15/2). The foetus may be destroyed, deformed or may suffer psychic injuries due to physical and emotional disturbance of the mother (*Sā. 4*, 15-30). Faulty diet and habits, as well as mental shocks, a comprehensive list of which is given in the text, also contribute to this end (*Sā. 8*, 21).

Instructions are also given by Caraka for the proper care of the pregnant woman; these include specified diet, prophylactic treatment and maintenance of emotional harmony (*Sā. 8*, 32/1). Such treatments ensure good health, vitality and a pliable womb for the mother, and a soft placenta at the time of delivery (*Sā. 8*, 32).

The text describes in some detail the symptoms of recent and advanced pregnancy (*Sā. 2*, 22; *4*, 16), and the pre-indications of male and female births (*Sā. 2*, 24-25). Methods of ensuring the birth of male offspring (*Sā. 8*, 11-19) are also indicated.

The signs of imminent delivery (*Sā. 8*, 36), the requirements of a well-appointed maternity house (*Sā. 8*, 33-35), methods of minimizing labour pains (*Sā. 8*, 38-39), proper handling and help in delivery (*Sā. 8*, 40-41), and post-natal care of the child (*Sā. 8*, 42-45) and its mother (*Sā. 8*, 48-49) are also described in detail.

#### (d) HUMORAL THEORY (CONCEPT OF THE ORIGIN OF DISEASES)

The well-known humoral theory, which postulates the existence of three humors in the human body—named *vāyu* (or *vāta*), *pitta* and *kapha*, is built upon the premise that apart from a few exceptions all human beings have a predominance of one of the three humors from the very moment of conception (*Sū. 7*, 39). The few exceptions are equi poised, enjoying perfect health; the rest can be classified according to the continual predominance of a particular humor in their system. The inherent imbalance makes them always susceptible to diseases (*Sū. 7*, 40). The types can be diagnosed by their physical characteristics (*Vi. 8*, 96-99). But diseases actually occur when

the humors are provoked (*Vi.* 6, 13). In normal health the three humors are balanced (*Vi.* 6, 13/2). But if a person of the *vāta* type indulges in foods and acts which provoke that humor, the *vāta* is aggravated and afflicts the person's body with physical and mental disorders of the *vāta* type and impairs his strength, health, complexion and span of life (*Vi.* 6, 16/1). The same consequences are in store for the person of the *pitta* type when that humor is provoked, and same also holds good for the third humor, *kapha* (*Vi.* 6, 18/1). The individual types are much less affected and may in fact be benefited by indulging in foods and acts which provoke the other two humors (*Vi.* 6, 13-18; *Sū.* Chapter 20).

All pathological conditions of the mind and the body, and even their degrees of severity, are direct results of morbid and aggravated humors (*Vi.* 6, 4-9). The morbidity of one humor can be accompanied by that of a second or by both the others, giving rise to a simultaneous discordance of two or three humors (*Vi.* 6, 11). Thus permutations and combinations of three humors in different degrees may give rise to numerous pathological symptoms (*Vi.* chapter 6). According to the severity of the provoked humors, all diseases can be classified as incurable, major, or minor (*Vi.* chapter 7). It is the physician's duty to try to correct as far as it lies in his power the specific imbalances and to relieve the aggravated humors by proper diet and treatment for each class and type of diseases. Some portions of the *Sūtrasthāna* (Chap. 12, 16, 17, 18, 19, 20, 22, 24, 27), practically the entire *Cikitsāsthāna* and *Nidānasthāna*, and portions of the other *sthānas* are devoted to the descriptions of various diseases, their classifications according to humors, as well as their dietetic and medicinal treatments.

The three humors *vāyu*, *pitta* and *kapha*, when abnormal (*prakupita*), and the various waste products of the body tend to weaken or destroy the body. These are called *malas*. So long as they remain in proper measure they do not pollute or weaken the body or give rise to diseases. Within their proper measure even the *malas* are called *dhātus* (body-constituents). *Mala dhātus* and *prasāda dhātus* (body-constituents which specifically help sustenance and growth) thus co-operate in maintaining the body (*Sū.* 28, 3).

The places in the body, which are usually affected by *vāta*, *pitta* and *kapha* in their abnormal (*prakupita*) condition, as described by Caraka, are: bladder, rectum, waist, bones of the legs, and specially the smaller intestine (*pakvāsaya*) for *vāta* affection; sweat, blood, particularly the stomach, for *pitta* affection; head, neck, the joints, stomach, fat and particularly the chest for *kapha* affection (*Sū.* 20, 8).

The physician should find out not only which *dosa* (humor) is abnormal, but also which qualities of that *dosa* have run to excess. The nature of the disturbance of a *dosa* (humor) is determined by the nature of the disturbance of its qualities involved (*Ni.* 1, 13).

(e) *Vāyu* AND ITS ROLE IN HUMAN SYSTEM AND IN NATURE (*Sū. 12, 8*)

According to Caraka *vāyu* is that which keeps the machine of the body at work. It is the impelling force for all bodily efforts, and sets in motion the sense organs and the mind; it regulates the body elements, maintains equilibrium in the body, stimulates digestion, eliminates harmful matter and waste products, and gives shape to the foetus. It manifests itself in five forms: *prāna*, *udāna*, *samāna*, *vyāna*, and *apāna*. Their seats in different parts of the body and their physiological effects are also specified (*Ci. 28*, 4-9).

When activated in an abnormal state *vāyu* may create diseases of the body, cause mental depression, affect the sense organs, destroy or deform the foetus, or increase the period of gestation.

In nature *vāyu* serves as an envelope for the earth, supports combustion, causes the formation of clouds, the condensation and precipitation of water as rain, and gives rise to streams. It helps growth of plants, flowers, fruits and crops, and maintains the division of seasons.

*Vāyu* in an abnormal state in nature is identified with storms and winds, causing damage to matter and life.

The properties of *vāyu* has been described by Caraka as dry (*sukṣa*), cold (*śīta*), light (*laghu*), subtle (*sūkṣma*), moving (*cala*), scattering everything in different directions (*viśada*) and rough (*khara*). *Vāyu* has been identified with the continuity of life (*Sū. 1, 59*; *12, 8*).

## (f) MEMORY AND DREAM

Caraka has enumerated eight causes of memory (*Śā. 1, 148-149*):

(a) Impressions, similar and dissimilar; (b) co-ordination of mind; (c) practice; (d) knowledge; (e) recollection; (f, g, & h) repetition of sight, hearing, and perception

Dreams have been classified by Caraka into seven types, based on (*In. 5, 27-46*):

(a) Visual impression; (b) auditory impression; (c) experience; (d) inner desires; (e) fancy; (f) premonition; (g) morbid humors.

An account of the different varieties of dreams arising from morbid humors has been given, particularly those foreboding death.

## (g) ETHICS IN CARAKA

Caraka advances a very catholic and commonsense view of *karma* and rebirth differing from those of other Indian philosophers. The laws of *karma* are not considered immutable by Caraka who allows a limited amount of freedom to human efforts in arresting the fruits of all ordinary non-moral actions. Only the effects of very good or bad moral actions cannot be thus modified or averted by human efforts. The fruits of all non-moral or ordinary actions can be averted by the exercise of human intelligence,

wisdom and well-balanced conduct, and by the administration of proper medicine and the like. Caraka therefore holds that right conduct (*sadvṛtta*) can help in the preservation of physical and mental health and in securing sense-control (*indriyavijaya*) (*Vi.* 3, 28-38; *Sū.* 8, 17).

Caraka recognizes that there are three primary desires serving as the springs or causes of all our actions. These are: desire for self-preservation (*prāṇaiṣanā*), desire for wealth (*dhanaiṣanā*), and a desire for a happy future life (*paralokaiṣanā*) (*Sū.* 11, 3, 7, 8, 13).

#### IV. PHYSIOLOGICAL PROCESSES

##### (a) DIGESTION AND METABOLISM

Production of heat in the body is said to be the basis of life process. The life-span, vital breath, vital essence, body-heat, muscular strength, energy, lustre, etc., all are dependent upon the production of heat inside the organism. When the body-heat becomes abnormal, disease results; when it is suppressed or dies out, there is an end of life (*Ci.* 15, 3-4). In the *Caraka Saṃhitā* the word *agni* has been used for body-heat; its literal meaning is fire. This is related closely to metabolic processes (*Vi.* 6, 12).

This production of body-heat depends upon the intake of food. Food nourishes the body elements, vital essence, strength, etc.; but the nutrient action of food is a result of gastric digestion. If the process of digestion is hampered, food fails to nourish (*Ci.* 15, 5).

Ingested food and drink pass into the stomach and are broken up and softened by the digestive fluid in the stomach. During this process, the food is transformed into a sweet, frothy mucus-like fluid. As the digestive process continues, it becomes acidic and, issuing out of the stomach, excites the secretion of thin bile (*Ci.* 15, 8-10). Ultimately it is converted into assimilable nutritive fluid and also some waste products. Excretions of the body are formed from the waste products (*Sū.* 28, 4/7). The process of digestion ends in the large intestines where the remnants are converted into lumps of stool (*Ci.* 15, 11).

The nutritive fluid formed is converted into blood, flesh, fat, bone-marrow, semen, ligaments and clear fluid (serum ?), as well as the sensory faculties (*Sū.* 28, 4/2). The body elements are replenished by the food and are able to maintain the body in a proper condition by gathering the necessary ingredients from food. This replenishment and maintenance take place when the various metabolic processes are proceeding without interruption, and the *srotāṁsi* (movements of body-fluids) are unimpeded in their proper channels. The nutritive fluid then pervades the whole body (*Sū.* 28, 3).

The body channels, constituting the means of passage of the nutritive fluids from food, feed the various body elements in the requisite measure

and with the required constituents (*Sū. 28*, 5/1). The requirements of the body according to size, condition and age determine the quantity of nutritive fluid formed from food, thus maintaining the balance of the body elements (*Sū. 28*, 4/3 and 4/4).

From the waste products of digestion are formed: sweat, urine and stools; the morbid forms of the three body-humors; the excretions of the eyes, ears, nose, mouth, hair-follicles and female parts; the hairs of the head, face and body; and the nails. The quantities produced depend on the age, size and condition of the body (*Sū. 28*, 4/1 and 4/4).

#### (b) MOVEMENT OF FLUIDS THROUGH CHANNELS OF THE HUMAN BODY

Caraka states that there are innumerable *srotāmsi* or fluid currents through numerous channels in the human body. They serve to convey nutrients and healing matters where needed, and to carry away decaying and harmful products formed. These *srotas* convey the products of the body elements—blood, flesh, fat, bone, marrow, nutritional juices, semen and life-breath. These body elements cannot develop or decay independently of the *srotas* (*Vi. 5*, 4).

There is as much functional diversity of these channel systems as in the structural composition of the rest of the human body, but the most important among them are those which carry life-breath, water, food, nutritive juices, blood, flesh, fat, bone-matter, marrow, semen, urine, stool and sweat. The three humors—*vāta*, *pitta* and *kapha*—diffuse throughout the entire body with the help of all these channel systems. The supersensory essences of man are independent of the channels; the entire sentient body is, in fact, both the vehicle and the field of their operation (*Vi. 5*, 3 and 6).

The channels are normally in the form of elongated vessels, extensive ducts or convoluted tubes. In dimension, they vary from large to very fine ones (*Vi. 5*, 25). The various types found in the body are: (a) *sirā* or vein, (b) *dhamani* or artery, (c) *rasāyana* or ducts, (d) *nāḍi* or tube, (e) *panthā* or tract, (f) *mārga* or passage, (g) *śarīracchidra* or body-orifice, (h) *saṃvṛtāsaṃvṛta* (vessel open at one end only), (i) *sthāna* or container, (j) *āśaya* or bladder, (k) *niketa* or closed container. Some of the channel systems are not visible to the naked eye (*Vi. 5*, 9).

The *srotāmsi* have specified centres and areas of operation. Such areas develop characteristic symptoms, if any of the *srotas* systems is vitiated or obstructed. (*Vi. 5*, 6). This obstruction is not limited to the stationary and mobile body-channels of the specified area, but may spread to the other *srotas* systems. If, however, any one of the three humors is affected, the entire body is also affected (*Vi. 5*, 9).

In the heart are rooted the ten main channels that carry the vital essence through the whole length and breadth of the body. These main channels

are either *dhamanis* which pulsate, or *srotāmsi* which carry nutritive fluids, or *sirā* (*Sū. 30*, 8 and 12). Heart is regarded as the only seat of consciousness (*Śā. 7*, 8-9), while *prāṇa* (the vital current) and all the senses emanate from the head (*Si. 9*, 4).

The heart is the source of the life-breath *srotas*; the bronchial area is the source of the water *srotas*; the region of the stomach, particularly the left side, is the source of the food *srotas*; the heart with its ten main channels is the source of the *srotas* of nutrition; the liver and spleen are the source of the blood *srotas*; the muscles and skin are the source of the flesh *srotas*; the kidneys and the omentum are the source of the fat *srotas*; the body fat is the source of the bone-matter *srotas*; the bones and joints, of the marrow *srotas*; the testes and phallus, of the semen *srotas*; the kidneys and the bladder, of the urine *srotas*; the colon and the rectum, of the stool *srotas*; and the fat and hair-follicles, of the sweat *srotas* (*Vi. 5*, 8).

When the *srotāmsi* are in an abnormal state, there is an increased or decreased flow of the fluids they carry; the channels also become knotted and there is diversion of flow to abnormal channels. The treatment of such conditions consists of treating the various parts of the body which have been recognized as the specific centres of the various *srotāmsi* (*Vi. 5*, 24, 26-28).

#### (c) TASTES

The taste is an intrinsic property of material substances. There are only six basic tastes—sweet, acid, saline, pungent, bitter and astringent (*Sū. 26*, 9). These six categories of taste, according to Caraka, emerge in different substances from the collocation in unequal proportions (preponderance or paucity) of the five *mahābhūtas* or primal elements. The same view is held regarding the origin of colour (*Sū. 26*, 40/2).

The sensation, which is immediately perceived on contact of the substance proper with the tongue, is called ‘taste’. Any sensation subsequent thereto is called the after-taste or latent taste. The physiological action of all substances depends upon the taste and also its after-taste, if any (*Sū. 26*, 28, 43).

All tastes are conveyed through the medium of water which, according to Caraka, sustains all animal and plant life (*Sū. 26*, 30). But water has a taste which is imperceptible. Palatability, or otherwise, of a substance is a matter of personal idiosyncracy, while its beneficial or harmful action depends on factors, like its composition, purity and the time and clime of its use (*Sū. 26*, 9).

Single or pure tastes are to be found in many substances, but they occur mostly in combinations. For example, alkaline substances possess a complex taste, with saline and pungent tastes predominating. By the presence of two, three, four, five or all six tastes in the same substance, fifty-seven mixed tastes may arise, which with the six simple tastes make sixty-three different tastes (*Sū. 26*, 9 and 24).

In common with the bodily humors, tastes have the inherent properties of heaviness, lightness, coldness, heat, oiliness and dryness. (*Sū. 26*, 9). A knowledge of the tastes of different substances is therefore essential in the treatment of diseases which are caused by the abnormalities of the body humor (*Sū. 26*, 27). In fact, each and every substance, due to the inherent property of taste, may be put to medicinal use, with due consideration to the appropriate time of its application, its quantity, purity, combination with other substances physical properties and dosage (*Sū. 26*, 12, 29).

The text describes in detail the beneficial physiological actions of the substances belonging to the basic taste groups, and the pathological symptom produced by their exclusive indulgence or over-indulgence. Thus, with the taste as guide, all edible and medicinal substances, taken in the right measure and manner, are invariably beneficial (*Sū. 26*, 43-44).

## V. HEALTH AND LONGEVITY

### (a) PERSONAL HYGIENE

Caraka enjoins constant vigilance and a regular daily and seasonal routine of prophylactic measures for the maintenance of health and vigour (*Sū. 5*, 103). The use of collyrium at night and of eye-salve and eye-drop after exposure to glare are recommended for good eyesight. Smoking of pipes and cigars, containing medicinal herbs, at regular intervals everyday said to prevent neuralgic pains and increase mental alertness (*Sū. 5*, 15-27) but many complications and even permanent injury may be caused by uncontrolled smoking, especially in an exhausted or intoxicated state (*Sū. 5*, 38-45).

The application of medicated oil to the nostrils at prescribed times retards senility and maintains the acuteness of sight, smell and hearing (*Sū. 5*, 48-70).

Brushing the teeth twice a day with partly crushed green twigs of certain plants, and scraping the tongue with shaped metallic scrapers, ensure strong teeth, sweet breath and a good appetite. Medicated gargles keep the facial muscles young, sharpen taste, increase appetite, and prevent dental decay (*Sū. 5*, 71-80).

Daily massage of the scalp and hair with approved vegetable oils prevent insomnia, baldness, grey hairs and sagging of the face muscles (*Sū. 5*, 81-83).

Draining the ear-passage with oil prevents deafness and other affections of the ear (*Sū. 5*, 84).

Daily massage of the body prevents excessive sweating, removes offensive body-odour and gives suppleness to muscles and tendons (*Sū. 5*, 90-93). Massaging with oils acts as a tonic to the skin, induces tolerance to physical hardship, makes the contours of the body firm and the skin glossy (*Sū. 5*, 88-89).

Bathing promotes vitality, physical stamina, longevity and removes fatigue (*Sū. 5*, 94).

The feet and private parts are to be kept scrupulously clean, and the hair, beard and nails regularly trimmed (*Sū. 5*, 98).

The use of clean apparel, foot-wear and umbrellas promotes mental as well as physical comfort, and ensures good health (*Sū. 5*, 95, 100-101).

Regulated physical exercise aids digestion and increases capacity for work and physical strength, but overexercise or excessive physical work, indicated by an increased rate of respiration and a feeling of oppression in the cardiac region, causes debility and wasting diseases (*Sū. 7*, 31-35).

In order to maintain good health one should not unnecessarily or unduly suppress the natural urges and body-functions; he should not sleep in a crooked position, nor on a narrow and uneven bed; he should not ride on an uncomfortable saddle or carriage-seat; he should not gaze directly at the sun or strong lights, nor expose himself to strong sunlight, storm or snow-fall for extended periods, nor warm himself directly before or over a fire; he should not indulge excessively in alcoholic drinks, heavy meals, or sexual acts, nor mate with a diseased or unfit partner, nor take part in unnatural or improper sexual relations; he should avoid keeping late hours, taking a cold bath or a cold drink in a fatigued condition, and using soiled clothes after a bath (*Sū. 8*, 19-22).

The mental impulses of greed, fear, anger, excessive melancholy, vanity, hatred, harsh speech and evil thoughts are as injurious to the body as to the mind (*Sū. 7*, 26-28).

All harmful physical and mental habits can be overcome gradually by proper training or by personal effort (*Sū. 7*, 36-38).

Special measures are recommended for the maintenance of health during seasonal changes. Sudation, sunbath, warm apartments, thick and protective dress and bedding, and rich food are recommended when the cold season sets in (*Sū. 6*, 9-21). Physical exercise, lightly cooked meats and light alcoholic beverages are prescribed for spring time (*Sū. 6*, 24-26). Rich food, alcohol and hard exercise should be avoided in summer. In the hottest days one should not venture out in the noon-time heat, but take rest by sleeping during the day in order to compensate for keeping late hours at night (*Sū. 7*, 30). Thrice a year at prescribed seasons, the body should be cleansed of all accumulated waste matter by sudation, steam-baths, emesis, purgative drugs, enemas, and douches (*Sū. 7*, 47).

#### (b) EFFECTS OF ENVIRONMENT ON HEALTH

Caraka treats bodily health not only as a personal problem, but also in its relation to heredity (*Sū. 3*, 3-17), geographical environment, climate, water-supply and seasonal variations (*Vi. 3*, 6). The possibility of diseases due to such external factors alone was recognized (*Vi. 3*, 4).

According to Caraka, though individual persons differ widely in physical health and vitality, they are collectively liable to devastating epidemics caused by external factors (*Vi.* 3, 6-7).

Inhabitants of open spaces with scanty rainfall, and predominance of dry winds and of isolated forest areas are generally well-knit, hardy and healthy. Inhabitants of humid climates with abundant rainfall, marshy lands, deltas, and dense forests are generally delicate in physique and in health. Areas with a proper balance of dry and moist seasons and of open spaces and forests generally contribute to good health (*Ka.* 1, 8; *Vi.* 3, 7, 47).

It is stated that from the beginning of the summer to the end of the rainy season there is a gradual waning of strength in man (*Sū.* 6, 6-7). The cold season increases appetite and digestive power, when, with proper nourishment, the bodily vigour reaches its highest peak (*Sū.* 6, 8-9).

#### (c) NUTRITION AND DIET

*Ahāratattva* (*Sū.* 25, 35, etc.) or dietetics forms an important and integral part of the *Caraka Samhitā* (*Sū.* Chap. 5, 6, 25, 26, 27; *Śā.* Chap. 6). Wholesome diet is stated to promote bodily growth and health; unwholesome food is the most important cause of diseases (*Sū.* 25, 31). The importance of a proper diet in health and sickness is repeatedly stressed upon (*Sū.* Chap. 5, 6; *Śā.* Chap. 6). In the chapter on digestion it is asserted that the life-process itself depends upon the production of body-heat, derived from the food taken (*Ci.* 15, 3-5).

A direct relationship is said to exist between the tastes of substances and their physiological actions. No distinction can be drawn between foods and drugs, as both possess taste and nutritive value, and exert specific action on the body.

Edible and potable substances are classified into cereals, legumes, potable water, salts, pot-herbs, fish, flesh, fruits, sugarcane derivatives, milk, ghee and other milk products, vegetable oils, lards, animal fats, and alcoholic beverages (*Sū.* 25, 38). The most nutritive and the most harmful in each class are listed (*Sū.* 25, 38-39). Eggs, blood and semen of various creatures are also stated to have nutritive value, though their use is not recommended (*Śā.* 6, 10).

The text mentions in detail the digestibility, nutritive value and medicinal action of several hundred different edible and potable substances of various classes (*Sū.* Chap. 27). It is pointed out that all such substances can gain in nutritive value or become harmful by combination with other items, by cooking or preparation, and according to quantity taken, palatability, appetite, bodily health, local climate, season, and eating habits (*Sū.* 26, 87-89). A list of substances which are incompatible with each other, or unwholesome in particular seasons, is given (*Sū.* 26, 84 *et seq.*).

Even light, easily digested and nutritious food should not be taken in excess of bodily requirements, or after the appetite has been satisfied. Difficultly digestible food should not be taken habitually. If ever used, the quantity should not exceed a fraction of a full meal (*Sū. 5*, 7-11). Rich spicy foods, fats, and alcoholic drinks are stated to be beneficial in the cold season; lightly cooked cereals and meats, salts and light wines in spring and autumn; and light gruels, vegetables, fruits and acidulated cold drinks in summer (*Sū. Chap. 6*).

According to their intrinsic properties different foods undergo metabolism into body-elements of the same nature and inhibit the formation of those having opposite properties (*Sū. 6*, 16). A properly planned diet, using various agreeable and nourishing foods in rotation, regulates the body-elements (*Sū. 6*, 6 and 7).

#### (d) REJUVENATION

Revitalization therapy is a prominent feature of the *Caraka Samhitā*. It is suggested that the body-fluids are capable of being replenished and renewed by proper medication; and that it is possible to achieve not only vitality and vigour, but also greater resistance to disease, longevity without senile decay, heightened memory and intelligence, and an improvement in bodily strength, personal beauty and sense perceptions. In fact, Caraka asserts that even in old age it is possible to regain youth and remain youthful for a very long period. (*Ci. 1/1*, 6-12).

The treatment for rejuvenation follows the fulfilment of three preliminary conditions: namely, the patient must start with a single-minded determination and complete faith; he should undergo the treatment in a nursing home (the exact specifications and equipment of which are listed); he should remain under the constant supervision of his physician. The season and weather for treatment must be properly selected (*Ci. 1/1*, 17-23).

The body is then thoroughly cleansed by oil massage and sudation by various means. A course of intestinal aperients like myrobalans, rock-salt and special splices is given for cleansing the intestines. The diet is limited to light gruel and warm water (*Ci. 1/1*, 25-27).

Many preparations are prescribed for the actual rejuvenation process. The fruits, plants and herbs used for such prescriptions must be collected from Himalayan forests in their proper seasons and in perfect and flawless state. Pure honey, ghee, salts and minerals are also mentioned as ingredients in many prescriptions. Special diets are described in all cases (*Ci. Chap. 1*).

Claims have been made that it is possible by a special course of rejuvenation to transform entirely an aged and diseased body into a fresh and youthful one in the course of six months (*Ci. 1/4*, 7).

## (e) PUBLIC SANITATION

Some advice regarding public sanitation is found in the *Caraka Samhitā*. People are urged to avoid all filthy matters like offal, broken fragments of cooking vessels, and waters of public baths (*Sū. 8*, 18/6). Blowing the nose in a crowd or committing nuisance on a public road is forbidden. Adultery, association with prostitutes, gambling, drunkenness, crude habits of eating, dirty or inadequate dress, and picking the nose, or sneezing, are considered unhealthy practices to be avoided by those aspiring after a clean and meritorious life (*Sū. 8*, 19-25).

Contaminated water is recognized to be a major cause of ill health and epidemics (*Vi. 3*, 7), and the use of only clean and pure water from natural sources is recommended at various places of the text (*Sū. 6*, 47, etc.).

## VI. PHYSICIANS IN CARAKA

The *Caraka Samhitā* lays down an elaborate code regarding the training, duties, privileges and social status of physicians.

Any person could aspire to be a physician, provided he had a clear idea of the duties and obligations pertaining to the profession. Good health, capacity for sustained effort and single-minded devotion to the science were considered as essential qualifications for the student of medicine. An austere and celibate life was enjoined for the disciple during his training period (*Vi. 8*, 3, 7, 13).

The student was free to choose his own branch of the science. The choice of a teacher also rested with him. But it was for the teacher to assess the merit of the candidate from his appearance, voice, acuteness of sensory perceptions, personality, intellectual capacity and mental outlook before selecting him as a disciple. Instructions were given free. The disciple lived with the preceptor like a son, slave or supplicant till the training was completed and had to follow a rigid time-table (*Vi. 8*, 3, 4, 7, 8, 13).

Aspiration for success, wealth and fame was considered normal on the part of an intending physician; but obligations to his future patients and to the society were repeatedly impressed upon by the preceptor. Desertion of, or injury to, patients under any circumstances was strictly forbidden (*Vi. 8*, 13).

A physician should remain, in a sense, a student all his life, gaining experience, knowledge and understanding. Great stress has been laid on periodic discussions and debates with other physicians in conferences and in private (*Vi. 8*, 13, 20). Theoretical knowledge, clarity of reasoning, wide practical experience, and personal skill have been described as the four valued qualifications of the physician (*Vi. 9*, 6). He is expected to lead a disciplined and unostentatious life, to be pleasant in his manners, and to be considerate and

gentle in speech (*Vi.* 8, 13). Friendship towards all, compassion for the ailing, devotion to professional duties and a philosophical attitude to cases with fatal endings—these have been defined as the four corner-stones of medical practice (*Sū.* 9, 26). Caraka advises that the physicians, while treating diseases, should also observe the instructions of the *Atharvaveda*, which include *svastyayana* (propitiatory rites), *bali* (offerings), *mangala homa* (auspicious oblations), *niyama* (penances), *prāyaścitta* (purificatory rites), *upavāsa* (fasting) and *mantra* (incantations), as also the use of *mani* (gems) in amulets (*Sū.* 30, 21; 26, 70; *Ci.* 1, 3.)

According to Caraka a physician is not expected to treat a person hated by the king or by the public (*Vi.* 8, 13), or a habitually vicious or dishonourable person (*Vi.* 3, 45). He is also not expected to treat patients suffering from incurable maladies (*Sū.* 10, 8).

The physician must not enter a private house without previous permission or proper introduction, nor attend a woman in the absence of her husband or guardian. He must not also say or do anything which might shock the patient or the relations and friends of the patient. He must not divulge any information about the patient and his household (*Vi.* 8, 13).

The physician, according to Caraka, should be held in high respect both by the king and the public (*Sū.* 9, 19). The practice of medicine by unqualified persons or self-styled physicians has been strongly condemned (*Sū.* 29, 12).

The physician is expected to maintain his own nursing home and dispensary, prepare medicinal preparations from raw materials, and arrange for the services of nurses and qualified attendants (*Sū.* Chap. 15).

## VII. DIAGNOSIS OF DISEASES

The Saṃhitā gives directions for the diagnosis of a large number of diseases from a consideration of their etiology, symptoms and prognosis. It also contains an exposition of the general theory and methods of diagnosis.

According to Caraka, there are three means open to the physician for ascertaining the nature of any sickness. They are: (i) theoretical knowledge of the possible causes and symptoms of all known diseases, (ii) meticulous observation of the patient's symptoms and complaints, (iii) inferences based on previous experience. In the absence of one or more of the three aids to diagnosis, or with their fragmentary or incorrect knowledge, the physician cannot come to a true conclusion (*Vi.* 4, 3-5).

At another place Caraka again states that the three methods for the ascertainment of the nature of diseases are: *nidāna* (cause and effect relation), *pūrvavarūpa* (invariable prognostication), and *upaśaya* and *anupaśaya* (concomitant variation) (*Ni.* 1, 7, 8, 10).

It is essential for the physician to have an exhaustive theoretical know-

ledge of the nature of all diseases—their specific sources, exciting factors, preliminary indications, bodily symptoms, local pains caused by them, possible complications and aggravations, degrees of severity, periods of duration, and indications of recovery and convalescence. By interrogation and by the application of his own trained senses the physician should conduct a detailed examination of the patient's appearance, voice, abnormalities, intestinal and other internal sounds, blood and other body-fluids, and bodily excretions. If necessary, he should draw a sample of the patient's blood and test it by offering it to a dog or a crow. He should also gather all possible information regarding the digestion, bowel movement, vitality, acuteness of sensory perceptions, clarity of mind, memory, psychic condition, irregularities of behaviour, dreams, aversions, hankerings and complaints of the patient. Latent symptoms, if any, should be tested by provocative medication. Only then he can make a diagnosis of the ailment, determine the expectation of recovery or imminence of death, and decide upon a course of treatment (*Vi.* 4, 6-9). It has been emphasized that fever is the first symptom of all diseases (*Ni.* 1, 16).

Diseases can be mild or severe. The preliminary symptoms are often the same. In fact, the behaviour, bodily appearance and apparent vitality of the patient may sometimes give false indications. It is easy for the inexperienced physician to jump to conclusions on insufficient or misleading evidence. A mild palliative prescribed for a disease which is destined to become serious, or a strong medicine for a mild variety, may cause considerable injury to the patient; even death may result. Mere identification of a disease does not mean its diagnosis; it is absolutely necessary to foresee its possible course and severity (*Vi.* 7, 2, 3, 5, 7).

Some diseases are incurable and are known as such by their peculiar symptoms; such symptoms often indicate the period the patient will survive (*Ni.* 1, 6; *In.* Chap. 6 & 7). Some diseases are secondary, being caused by others occurring earlier. They may occur after the original malady subsides, or may run simultaneously with the later phase of the primary disease (*Ni.* 8, 20-23).

In diagnosis the patient's personal history and background are of great importance. Residents of different countries are used to different diets, have different habits, and differ in physical fitness and mental inclinations. Hence, what is wholesome and normal for one type of people may have opposite effects on another. The liability to diseases of a person depends upon his place of birth, normal place of residence and accidental presence in a foreign country (*Vi.* 8, 93).

The patient's nature, abnormalities, vitality, physical build, bodily proportions, physical equilibrium, psychic condition, capacity for food, capacity for physical exercise, and age—all are important factors in diagnosis (*Vi.* 8, 94).

If the body-elements are individually healthy and collectively in harmony with each other, the patient is highly resistant to diseases and specially to diseases of the severe type (*Vi.* 8, 111). He is also not easily affected by senile decay. The opposite is true for people with unhealthy and unbalanced body-elements (*Vi.* 8, 112). In addition to these extreme cases, there are also intermediate types (*Vi.* 8, 113).

## VIII. METHODS OF TREATMENT, INCLUDING SURGERY

Different types of methods for the treatment of diseases have been described by Caraka, as follows:

- (1) *Oral medication* by single or compounded medicinal substances; sometimes more than fifty in a prescription are listed. Special emphasis is laid on diet, considered an essential part of the treatment (*Sū.* Chap. 5, 6, 25, 26, 27). Purgation and/or emesis is frequently recommended for cleansing the system of accumulated waste materials. Apart from drugs, purging is also effected by enemas (*Ci.* Chap. 7, 13, etc.; *Si.* Chap. 9-12).
- (2) (a) *Eye-drops and -salves* for eye diseases and loss of visual power (*Sū.* 5, 18, etc.).  
 (b) *Gargles* for diseases of the mouth, throat, teeth and gums (*Sū.* 5, 78, 79, etc.).  
 (c) *Medicinal cigars and smoking mixtures* for affections of the head, nose, throat and bronchial tract (*Sū.* 5, 24, etc.).  
 (d) *Nasal medication in the form of powders, ointments, or inhaled fumes* for psychic disorders, fainting fits, and affections of the nose (*Sū.* 5, 13, 14, etc.). In epilepsy and insanity, herbs and animal substances are burnt for inhalation (*Ci.* Chap. 10).
- (3) *Liquid unguents, creams, salves, ointments, lotions and medicated oils* for the skin and other parts (*Ci.* Chap. 6, 7, etc.).
- (4) *Suppositories, tampons, and soaked cotton swabs* for ear-passages and lower orifices of the body (*Ci.* Chap. 7, 8, etc.).
- (5) *Enemas* of nutritive and healing fluid-mixtures for absorption in the rectal and vaginal passages in wasting diseases, debility and fractures (*Si.* Chap. 3, 5, 12, etc.).
- (6) *Douches* for flushing the rectal, vaginal and urethral passages and for relieving congestion (*Sū.* Chap. 9, 10, etc.). Douche cans, tubes, and catheters, made of gold, silver or alloys, were used for this purpose (*Sū.* 1, 44, 45, etc.).
- (7) *Sweating* the body surface by sun-bath, heated air, steam, or contact with hot surfaces for cleansing the system of absorbed impurities; sudation by steaming decoctions of medicinal

substances, vapours, fomentation, poultices, solid lumps of medicinal matter and hot immersion bath (*Sū.* Chap. 14).

- (8) *Bandages, splints and tourniquets* in fractures and surgical conditions (*Si.* Chap. 9). *Ligatures* for poisonous bites and for surgical operations (*Ci.* Chap. 23, 24, etc.).
- (9) *Bleeding* by incision, or by the application of leeches, in poisonous bites, epilepsy, rheumatism, etc. (*Ci.* Chap. 10, 23, etc.).
- (10) *Excision, incision, puncturing, removal of the skin-layer, cauterization, surgical removal, rupturing, probing and other surgical methods* (*Sū.* 11, 55); the removal of a dead foetus (*Śā.* 8, 30, *et seq.*) and an operation for peritonitis (*Ci.* 13, 185 *et seq.*) have been described in some detail; scalpels, metallic probes, etc. were used in such processes (*Si.* Chap. 9). The use of live ants of the big variety to grip together and hold tight the skin-flaps after an internal operation has been described (*Ci.* 13, 190 *et seq.*). The ants were killed by hot water and cut in two, with their gripping jaws left behind.
- (11) *Psychiatric methods* for curing mental conditions (*Vi.* Chap. 6).

In the treatment of all diseases the physician should take care to perform the following preparatory processes: purification (purgation, emesis, etc.), tranquilization (use of sedatives) of the system, and avoidance of all causative factors (*Vi.* 8, 30).

## IX. POISONS

The *Caraka Samhitā* includes a detailed discussion of the various categories of poisons and the means by which they enter the human system; their symptoms, effects and antidotes are also described.

The venoms secreted by animals, reptiles, aquatic creatures and insects are conveyed by their bites. They generally act very rapidly causing burning sensation, inflammation, swelling, drowsiness, fainting and diarrhoea. The symptoms are more pronounced in the lower extremities of the body (*Ci.* 10, 15, 17, 23).

Poisons from vegetable roots and bulbs, mineral poisons and artificially prepared poisons enter the human body through foods, beverages, water, smoke, vapours, skin-applications, or by mere contact (*Ci.* 23, 106-122). Such poisons act slowly and cause fever, spasms, throat contraction, muscular rigidity, partial paralysis, frothy salivation and vomiting. The symptoms are more pronounced in the upper parts of the body (*Ci.* 23, 16-17).

The toxic effects are liable to be mistaken for diseases (*Ci.* 23, 18). They vitiate the blood and other body-elements progressively; eight distinct stages with increasingly graver symptoms have been noted (*Ci.* 23, 14). Death may be caused by poisoning in the absence of proper treatment (*Ci.* 23, 31).

Treatment for poisoning consists in the immediate application of stimulants to protect the heart, followed by incision, tourniquets, ligatures, suction, blood-letting, application of freshly cut meat, oral medicines and counter-poisons, according to the nature of the toxic substance (*Ci.* 23, 35-50). For poisoning through food, drinks, etc., the immediate treatment is emesis (*Ci.* 23, 122).

A description of the distinctive symptoms of bites by ten types of snakes (cobra, viper, etc.), mosquitoes, poisonous flies, hornets, spiders, scorpions, lizards, rats, crabs, toads (*Ci.* 23, 124-158), dogs and some predatory animals (*Ci.* 23, 175, 220-232) is found in the text with specific antidotes for individual cases.

The medicinal value of venoms and vegetable poisons were known in Caraka's time. They are described to have antagonistic effects in the presence of each other (*Ci.* 23, 17). A significant passage states that even deadly poisons can be converted into excellent medicines by the right method of application (*Sū.* 1, 126).

Fumigation from vegetable and animal substances has been described as an antidote for most poisons (*Ci.* 23, 99). The insecticidal and vermicidal action of fumigation were also recognized and several recipes given for the purpose (*Ci.* 23, 98-100).

## X. PHYSICOCHEMICAL PROCESSES

Many of the common laboratory processes known today are found in the *Caraka Samhitā*. They occur in various passages which give instructions for compounding medicinal preparations (*Ci.* Chap. 1, 2, 15, etc.). A list of terms for such processes is given in Table 17.

Actual weights of the various ingredients of prescriptions are given in many cases; volumes are given in some instances. The *tulā* (balance) was used for weighing, and *mānabhāṇḍas* (measuring vessels) for measuring liquids (*Sū.* 15, 7). A list of the apparatus, mentioned in the various processes, is given in Table 16.

Descriptions of the following processes are given in some detail:

- (1) A flame test for food-poisons (possibly copper salts), where the flame shows a colour like the feathers of a peacock (*Ci.* 23, 109).
- (2) A process of destructive distillation (*Ci.* 15, 174).
- (3) A process for the separation of the volatile components of a mixture, using distillation and air-condensation (*Ci.* 1/2, 14).
- (4) A process for continuous extraction of the fatty matter present in a plant product by repeated distillation with a volatile oil, followed by its condensation (*Vi.* 7, 22).

For the purpose of heating, wood and the dried cakes of various animal dungs were used according to the temperature required (*Ci.* Chap. 1, 2, 15, etc.).

The mechanical processes mentioned are listed in Table 18.

## XI. CLASSIFICATIONS

*Vibhāgavidyā* (*Vi.* 4, 4), or the theory of classification, is a feature of the *Caraka Samhitā*.

Many substances and phenomena are divided into rational groups.

(1) The days of the *Samvatsara* (solar year) are divided into :

- (a) *Udakāyana* (period of absorption of moisture)
- (b) *Dakṣināyana* or *Visarga* (period of liberation of moisture).

Each of these periods is sub-divided into three seasons (*Śū.* 6, 4).

(2) *Deśa* (habitable land) is classified according to topography, rainfall and vegetation into :

- (a) *Jāngala* (dry grass lands)
- (b) *Anupa* (wet lands)
- (c) *Sādhāraṇa* (intermediate types) (*Ka.* 1, 8).

(3) *Prāṇi* (living creatures) are classified according to their manner of birth as:

- (i) *Jarāyuja* (born of womb)
- (ii) *Andaja* (born of eggs)
- (iii) *Svedaja* (born of heat and moisture)
- (iv) *Udbhidjja* (born of seeds) (*Śā.* 3, 16).

They are also classified in different contexts as:

- (a) *Kṛmi* (parasites found in living creatures) (*Śū.* 19, 4-9)
- (b) *Kīta* (wingless insects) (*Śū.* 27, 213)
- (c) *Pataṅga* (flying insects) (*Śā.* 8, 59)
- (d) *Ekaśapha* (solidungulate animals) (*Śū.* 27, 211)
- (e) *Dviśapha* (cloven-footed animals) (*Ci.* 17, 118)
- (f) *Mṛga* (herbivorous animals) (*Śū.* 13, 11)
- (g) *Krauyāda* (carnivorous animals) (*Śū.* 22, 27)
- (h) *Śvāpada* (dangerous beasts of prey) (*Śā.* 8, 59)
- (i) *Vyāla* (beasts of prey) (*Ci.* 23, 176)
- (j) *Gomāyu* (creatures with poisonous fangs or stings) (*Ci.* 23, 10)
- (k) *Sarpa* (snakes) (*Śū.* 27, 213).

Creatures, whose flesh has got dietic value, have been divided into eight groups (*Śū.* chap. 27). Table I gives a list of these groups.

(4) *Udbhid* substances (plants or vegetation) are said to be of four types:

- (i) *Vanaspati* (bearing fruits only)
- (ii) *Vānaspatya* (bearing fruits as well as flowers)

(iii) *Oṣadhi* (dying after bearing fruits)

(iv) *Virudha* (shrubs or herbs).

*Udbhid* substances (plants) also are divided in fifty groups according to the physiological actions of their decoctions (*Sū. chap. 4*): .

- (a) *Jivanīya* (promoter of longevity)
- (b) *Bṛmhanīya* (robortant and nourishing)
- (c) *Lekhanīya* (reducing obesity and scarifying)
- (d) *Bhedanīya* (promoter of excretion)
- (e) *Sandhāniya* (promotes joining of fractured parts)
- (f) *Dipanīya* promoter of digestion)
- (g) *Balya* (promoter of strength)
- (h) *Varnya* (brightens complexion)
- (i) *Kanthyā* (improves voice)
- (j) *Hṛdaya* (cordial)
- (k) *Tṛptighna* (removes sense of satiety)
- (l) *Arśaghna* (curative of piles or haemorrhoids)
- (m) *Kuṣṭaghna* (curative of obstinate skin diseases)
- (n) *Kaṇḍughna* (curative of pruritus)
- (o) *Kṛmighna* (curative of worms)
- (p) *Viṣaghna* (antidote to poisoning)
- (q) *Stanyajanana* (promoter of lactation)
- (r) *Stanyaśodhana* (purifier of breast-milk)
- (s) *Śukrajanana* (promoter of semen generation)
- (t) *Śukrasodhana* (purifier of semen)
- (u) *Snehopaga* (emollient)
- (v) *Svedopaga* (diaphoretic)
- (w) *Vamanopaga* (emetic)
- (x) *Virecanopaga* (purgative)
- (y) *Arusthāpanopaga* (useful in corrective enemas)
- (z) *Anuvasanopaga* (useful in enemas)
- (aa) *Śirovirecanopaga* (prevents discharges from the nose)
- (bb) *Chardinigrahāṇa* (curative of nausea)
- (cc) *Tṛṣṇānigrahāṇa* (curative of morbid thirst)
- (dd) *Hikkānigrahāṇa* (curative of hiccup)
- (ee) *Puriṣasamgrahāṇiya* (renders faecal matters consistent)
- (ff) *Puriṣavirajaniya* (alters colour of faecal pigment)
- (gg) *Mūtrasamgrahāṇiya* (corrective of excessive urination)
- (hh) *Mūtravirajaṇiya* (curative of coloured urine)
- (ii) *Mūtravirecaniya* (diuretic)
- (jj) *Kāṣahara* (curative of cough)
- (kk) *Śvāsaḥara* (curative of laboured breathing)
- (ll) *Svayathuhara* (curative of swelling and oedema)

- (mm) *Jvarahara* (curative of fever)
- (nn) *Śramahara* (curative of fatigue)
- (oo) *Dāhapraśamana* (curative of burning sensation)
- (pp) *Śitapraśamana* (curative of the sensation of cold)
- (qq) *Udardapraśamana* (curative of urticaria)
- (rr) *Āngamardapraśamana* (relieves pain in the limbs)
- (ss) *Śūlapraśamana* (cures pain in the bowels)
- (tt) *Śoṇitasthāpana* (haemostatic)
- (uu) *Vedanāsthāpana* (anodyne)
- (vv) *Samjñāsthāpana* (resuscitative)
- (ww) *Prajāsthāpana* (procreant, or curative of sterility)
- (xx) *Vayusthāpana* (prevents ageing).

A mention of the classification of plants into male and female varieties is found in Caraka in the case of the *Kūṭaja* (*Holarrhena antidysentrica*) plant (*Ka.* 5, 3, 5).

(5) *Dravya* (material substance) can be of three types in the context of their medicinal use:

- (i) *Jaṅgama* (originating from mobile living bodies)
- (ii) *Udbhid* (originating from plants)
- (iii) *Pārthiva* (of mineral origin) (*Sū. 1*, 68):
  - (i) *Jaṅgama* substances used in medicine are: *madhu* (honey), *gorasa* (milk), *pitta* (bile), *vasā* (fat), *majjā* (bone-marrow), *asṛk* (blood), *āmiṣa* (flesh), *mūtra* (urine), *carma* (hide), *retas* (semen), *asthi* (bone), *snāyu* (tendon or ligament), *śringa* (horn), *nakha* (nail), *khura* (hoof), *keśa* (hair), *loma* (fur or body-hair), *rocanā* (a bright yellow deposit obtained from bile) (*Sū. 1*, 69)
  - (ii) *Udbhid* substances used in medicine are: *mūla* (root), *tvak* (bark), *sāra* (pith), *niryyāsa* (resin or exudate), *nāla* (hollow stem or stalk), *khara* (prickly or rough parts), *pallava* (sprout or shoot), *kṣāra* (alkaline matter), *kṣīra* (sap), *phala* (fruit), *puspa* (flower), *bhasma* (ash), *tailāni* (expressed or essential oils), *kanṭaka* (thorn), *patrāṇi* (leaves), *śūṅga* (sheath or calyx of bud), *kanda* (bulb), *praroha* (parasitic growth) (*Sū. 1*, 73-74).
  - (iii) *Pārthiva* substances used in medicine are: *suvarṇa* (gold), *pañcaloha* (the five base metals; namely, silver, copper, iron, tin, lead), *mala* (the ores or corroded forms of the base metals), *sikatā* (sand), *manahśilā* (realgar), *mani* (gem or precious stone), *lavāṇa* (salts), *gairika* (red ochre), *añjana* (antimony black), *āla* (yellow orpiment).

(6) Natural waters are classified according to their sources (Table 6).

- (7) Diseases are classified as:
- (a) *Nijasariradosa* (inborn)
  - (b) *Āgantuja* (communicated from outside)
  - (c) *Mānasa* (mental) (*Sū. 11*, 45).
- (8) Poisons are classified into:
- (a) *Jaṅgama viṣa* (venom)
  - (b) *Sthāvara viṣa* (vegetable poisons)
  - (c) *Garaviṣa* (artificially prepared or mineral poisons) (*Ci.* Chap. 23).
- (9) *Kṛmi* (parasites of the body) are classified as:
- (a) *Sahaja* (symbiotic parasites)
  - (b) *Puriṣaja* (derived from faeces)
  - (c) *Kaphaja* (derived from mucus)
  - (d) *Śonitaja* (derived from the blood stream)
  - (e) *Malaja* (derived from the waste products of the body) (*Sū.* Chap. 19).

TABLE 1  
*Living Creatures*

Name in Caraka, reference, and synonyms (if any)	English and/or Latin name	Modern classification
<b>PRASAH-VARGA</b> ( <i>Sū. 27, 35, 36</i> )	Creatures which grab and tear off their food	
1. AŚVA <i>Syn.:</i> HAYA <i>In. 12</i> , 83 TURAGA <i>Vi. 3</i> , 36 TURAṄGA <i>Ci. 9</i> , 154 VĀJIN <i>Sū. 1</i> , 104	Horse ( <i>Equus caballus</i> )	Mammal
2. AŚVATARA	Mule	"
3. BABHRU	Large brown mongoose ( <i>Herpestes mungo</i> )	"
4. BHĀSA	Bearded vulture ( <i>Gypatus barbatus</i> )	Bird
5. CĀSA	Blue jay ( <i>Cyanocitta cristata</i> )	"
6. DHUMIKĀ	Owlet ( <i>Athene brama</i> )	"
7. DVĪPIN	Panther ( <i>Felis pardus</i> )	Mammal
8. GO <i>Syn.:</i> DHENU <i>Ci. 2/3</i> , 3 VRŚA <i>Sū. 12</i> , 18 RŚABHA <i>Ci. 10</i> , 48 JĀRADRAVA <i>Sū. 3</i> , 10	Cow ( <i>Bos tauras</i> )	"
9. GRDHRA	Vulture ( <i>Vulture monachus</i> )	Bird
10. JAMBUKA <i>Syn.:</i> ŚRGĀLA <i>Ci. 10</i> , 41	Jackal ( <i>Canis aureus</i> )	Mammal
11. KHARA	Ass ( <i>Asinus equidae</i> )	"
12. KULIṄGAKA	Sparrow hawk ( <i>Ploceus bengalensis</i> )	Bird
13. KURARA	Osprey ( <i>Pandion haliaetus</i> )	"
14. LOPĀKA	Fox ( <i>Vulpus bengalensis</i> )	Mammal
15. MADHUHĀ	Honey buzzard ( <i>Pernis apivorus</i> )	Bird
16. MĀRJĀRA <i>Syn.:</i> VIDĀLA <i>Ci. 10</i> , 41	Cat ( <i>Felis domesticus</i> )	Mammal
17. MUŚIKA <i>Syn.:</i> MUŚAKA <i>Vi. 3</i> , 7/3 UNDURA <i>Ci. 23</i> , 9	Mouse ( <i>Mus musculus</i> )	Mammal
18. RKṢA	Bear ( <i>Melusus labiatus</i> )	"
19. ŚAŚAGHNA	Golden eagle ( <i>Aquila chrysaetos</i> )	Bird
20. SIMHA	Lion ( <i>Felis leo</i> )	Mammal
21. ŚYENA	Hawk ( <i>Accipiter gentilis</i> )	Bird
22. TARAKṢU	Hyena ( <i>Hyaena striata</i> )	Mammal

TABLE I—(Contd.)

Name in Caraka, reference, and synonyms (if any)	English and/or Latin name	Modern classification
23. ULUKA	Indian horned owl ( <i>Bubo bengalensis</i> )	Bird
24. UṢTRA <i>Syn.:</i> KARABHA <i>Ci.</i> 13, 107	Camel ( <i>Camelus dromedarius</i> )	Mammal
25. VĀNARA	Hanuman or Langur ( <i>Semnopithecus entellus</i> ) and other Indian monkeys ( <i>Semnopithecus</i> )	"
26. VĀNTADA <i>Syn.:</i> ŚVĀN <i>Ci.</i> 10, 41	Dog ( <i>Canis familiaris</i> )	Mammal
27. VĀYASA <i>Syn.:</i> KĀKA <i>Ci.</i> 23, 47	Crow ( <i>Corvus splendens</i> )	Bird
28. VRKA	Wolf ( <i>Canis lupus</i> )	Mammal
29. VYĀGHRA <i>Syn.:</i> ŚĀRDŪLA <i>Ci.</i> 23, 192	Tiger ( <i>Felis tigris</i> )	"
<b>BHŪMIŚAYA-VARGA</b> <i>Sū.</i> 27, 37, 38	Burrowing animals	
1. BHEKA <i>Syn.:</i> MANḌŪKA <i>Ci.</i> 23, 9	Frog ( <i>Rana</i> )	Amphibia
2. CILLATA	Water shrew ( <i>Neomys fodiens</i> )	Mammal
3. CITRAPRASTHA KĀKULIMRGĀ	Reticulated python ( <i>Python reticulus</i> )	Reptile
4. GANDAKA	Gecko lizard ( <i>Gekkonida</i> )	"
5. GODHĀ	Iguana lizard ( <i>Iguanidae</i> )	"
6. KADALIN	Marmot ( <i>Marmota</i> )	Mammal
7. KRṢNAKĀKULIMRGĀ	Black python ( <i>Python molurus</i> )	Reptile
8. KURCIKĀ	Hedge-hog ( <i>Erinaceus europaeus</i> )	Mammal
9. NAKULA	Small mongoose ( <i>Herpestes mungo</i> )	"
10. ŚALLAKĀ	Porcupine ( <i>Acanthion leucura</i> )	"
11. ŚVĀVIT	Pangolin ( <i>Manis pentadactyl</i> )	"
12. ŚVETAKĀKULIMRGĀ	White python ( <i>Python molurus</i> )	Reptile
13. ŚYĀMAKĀKULIMRGĀ	Dark grey python ( <i>Python molurus</i> )	"
<b>ANUPA-VARGA</b> <i>Sū.</i> 27, 39	Creatures that dwell in marshy and wet lands	
1. CAMARA	Yak ( <i>Poephagus grunnicus</i> )	Mammal
2. GAJA <i>Syn.:</i> HASTĪN <i>Sū.</i> 1, 102 KUÑJARA <i>Ci.</i> 10, 40	Elephant ( <i>Elaphus indicus</i> )	"
3. GAVAYA	Goyal ox ( <i>Bos frontalis</i> )	"

TABLE I—(Contd.)

Name in Caraka, reference, and synonyms (if any)	English and/or Latin name	Modern classification
4. KHAṄGA	Rhinoceros ( <i>Rhinoceros unicornis</i> )	Mammal
5. MAHIṄA <i>Syn.:</i> RAKTĀKṢA Ci. 4, 4	Buffalo ( <i>Bos bubalus</i> )	„
6. NYĀNKU	Hog deer ( <i>Cervus porcinus</i> )	„
7. RURŪ	Swamp deer ( <i>Rucervus durandelli</i> )	„
8. ŠRMĀRA	Indian wild boar ( <i>Sus cristatus</i> )	„
9. VARĀHA	Pig ( <i>Sus scrofa</i> )	„
<b>VĀRIṄA-VARGA</b> Sū. 27, 40	Creatures that live under water	
1. GULUKI	Porpoise ( <i>Neomeris phocaenoides</i> )	Mammal
2. KARKĀTAKA <i>Syn.:</i> UCCITIṄGA Ci. 23, 153	Crab ( <i>Brachyura</i> )	Crustacea
3. KUMBHĪRA <i>Syn.:</i> NAKRA Ci. 2/2, 10	Gharial crocodile ( <i>Crocodylus porosus</i> )	Reptile
4. KŪRMA <i>Syn.:</i> KACCHAPA Ci. 2/2, 10	Tortoise or turtle ( <i>Chelonia</i> )	„
5. MAKARA	Capricorn (Sea monster ?)	
6. MATSYA	Fish ( <i>Pisces</i> )	Fish
7. ŠANKHA	Conch snail ( <i>Gastropoda</i> )	Gastropoda
8. ŠIŚUMĀRA	Dolphin ( <i>Dolphinus gangetica</i> )	Mammal
9. ŠUKTI	Pearl oyster ( <i>Margaritifera</i> )	Mollusca
10. TIMIṄILA	Whale ( <i>Cetacea</i> )	Mammal
<b>AMBUCĀRI-VARGA</b> Sū. 27, 41-44	Creatures that live around, or on the surface of, water	
1. AMBUKUKKUTI	Moor hen ( <i>Gallinula chloropus</i> )	Bird
2. ĀRĀ	Avocet ( <i>Recurvirostra avosetta</i> )	„
3. BALĀKĀ	Crane ( <i>Ardea nivea</i> )	„
4. CAKRĀVĀKA	Ruddy sheldrake ( <i>Anas cascara</i> )	„
5. HAMSA <i>Syn.:</i> DHĀRTARĀŚTRA Sū. 27, 85	Swan ( <i>Cygnus olor</i> )	„
6. KADAMBA	Grey-leg goose ( <i>Anser anser</i> )	„
7. KĀKATUṄDAKA	River tern ( <i>Sterna hirundo</i> )	„
8. KĀMAKĀLI	Tropic bird ( <i>Phaethon rubricauda</i> )	„
9. KĀRĀNDAVA	White-fronted goose ( <i>Anser albifrons</i> )	„
10. KEṄARIN	Curlew ( <i>Oedienemus crepitans</i> )	„

TABLE I—(Contd.)

Name in Caraka, reference, and synonyms (if any)	English and/or Latin name	Modern classification
11. KRAUÑCA	Demoiselle crane ( <i>Anthropoides virgo</i> )	Bird
12. MADGU	Small cormorant ( <i>Phalacrocorax pygmaeus</i> )	„
13. MAÑITUÑDAKA	Oyster-catcher ( <i>Haematopus ostralegus</i> )	„
14. MEGHARĀVA	Trumpeteer swan ( <i>Cygnus buccinator</i> )	„
15. MR̄NĀLAKAÑTHA	Snake-bird ( <i>Plotus angina</i> )	„
16. NANDIMUKHA	Flamingo ( <i>Phoenicopterus roseus</i> )	„
17. PĀKAHAMSA	Mute swan ( <i>Cygnus olor</i> )	„
18. PLAVA	Pelican ( <i>Pelicanus onocrotalus</i> )	„
19. PUŠKARĀVYA	Lily trotter ( <i>Ardea sibirica</i> )	„
20. PUNDĀRĪKĀKSHA	White-eyed pochard ( <i>Nyroca ferina</i> )	„
21. RAKTAŚIRŠAKA	Purple heron ( <i>Ardea purpurea</i> )	„
22. ROHINI	Common teal ( <i>Anas crecia</i> )	„
23. SAHACĀRIN	Petrel ( <i>Oceanitidae</i> )	„
24. ŠARARA	Skimmer bird ( <i>Rhynchos</i> )	„
25. SĀRASA	Indian crane ( <i>Megalornis grus</i> )	„
26. SUMUKHA	Mandarin duck ( <i>Anas galericulata</i> )	„
27. UTKOŠA	Mallard ( <i>Anas platyrhynchos</i> )	„
28. VAKA	Heron ( <i>Ardea goliath</i> )	„
29. VĀTI	Little grebe ( <i>Podiceps ruficollis</i> )	„
JAÑGALA-VARGA <i>Sū. 27, 45, 46</i>	Herbivorous animals living in grass-lands or forests	
1. CĀRUŠKA	Gazelle ( <i>Gazelle bennetti</i> )	Mammal
2. ENA	Fawn deer ( <i>Cervus rusa</i> )	„
3. GOKARNA	Cow-eared deer ( <i>Antilope picta</i> )	„
4. HARIÑA	Black buck ( <i>Antilope cervicapra</i> )	„
5. KĀLAPUCCHAKA <i>Syn.:</i> ASITAPUCCHAKA <i>Ci. 14, 138</i>	Black-tailed deer ( <i>Odocoileus ?</i> )	„
6. KOTTAKĀRAKA	Barking deer ( <i>Cervus muntjæ</i> )	Mammal
7. KR̄SHA	Musk deer ( <i>Moschus moschiferus</i> )	„
8. KURĀNGA	Indian antelope ( <i>Antilope cervicapra</i> )	„
9. MR̄GAMĀTRKĀ	Red deer ? ( <i>Cervus elaphus</i> )	„
10. PR̄SATA	Spotted deer ( <i>Cervus axis</i> )	„
11. RĀMA	Kashmir red deer ( <i>Cervus elaphus</i> )	„
12. SAMBHARA	Sambhar ( <i>Cervus unicolor</i> )	„
13. ŠARABHA	Wapiti ( <i>Cervus canadensis</i> ) ?	„

TABLE I—(Contd.)

Name in Caraka, reference, and synonyms (if any)	English and/or Latin name	Modern classification
14. ŠAŠA	Hare or rabbit ( <i>Leporidae</i> )	Mammal
15. ŠVADAMŠTR	Mouse deer ( <i>Trengulus meminna</i> )	„
16. URAÑA	Orial or wild sheep ( <i>Ovis vignei</i> )	„
17. VARAPOTA	Small antelope ( <i>Antilope cervicapra</i> )	„
<b>VIŠKIRA-VARGA</b> <i>Sū. 27, 47, 49</i>	Birds that scatter their food	Gallinaceous birds
1. AVAKARA <i>Syn.:</i> MAYŪRA <i>Sū. 26</i> , 84 SIKHIN <i>Sū. 27</i> , 58 BARTHIN <i>Ci. 23</i> , 182	Peacock or pea-fowl ( <i>Pavo cristatus</i> )	Bird
2. ČAKORA	Greek pheasant ( <i>Perdix rufa</i> )	„
3. GIRIVARTAKA	Mountain quail ( <i>Coturnix coturnix</i> )	„
4. GONARDA	Hill partridge ( <i>Ardea sibirica</i> )	„
5. INDRĀBHA	Hedge sparrow ( <i>Leucocerea aureola</i> )	„
6. KANKA	Heron ( <i>Ardeidae</i> )	„
7. KAPIÑJALA	Black partridge ( <i>Francolinus vulgaris</i> )	„
8. KRAKARA	Snipe ( <i>Ardea virago</i> )	„
9. KUKKUBHA	Crow pheasant ( <i>Coccyzus</i> )	„
10. KUKKUṬA <i>Syn.:</i> CARANĀYUDHA <i>Sū. 7</i> , 11 DAKSĀ <i>Sū. 10</i> , 11 TĀMRACUDA <i>Ci. 2/2</i> , 28	Red-spur fowl ( <i>Galloperdix spadicea</i> )	„
11. LAVA	Bustard quail ( <i>Turnix suscitatus</i> )	„
12. RAKTAVARTMAKA	Red jungle fowl ( <i>Gallus ferrugineous</i> )	„
13. SĀRAPADA	Stork ( <i>Ciconia boycinia</i> )	„
14. TITTIRI	Gray partridge ( <i>Arborophila torquata</i> )	„
15. UPACAKRA	Smaller Greek pheasant ( <i>Perdix rufa</i> )	„
16. VARAPADA	Spoon-bill ( <i>Platela leucorodia</i> )	„
17. VARTAKA	Indian button quail ( <i>Turnix indica</i> )	„
18. VARTIKĀ	Bush quail ( <i>Coturnix sylvatica</i> )	„
19. VARTIRAKA	Rain quail ( <i>Coturnix coromandelica</i> )	„
<b>PRATUDA-VARGA</b> <i>Sū. 27, 50-52</i>	Birds that peck and gobble their food	Bird
1. AṄGĀRACŪDAKA	Black bulbul ( <i>Microscelis psaroides</i> )	„
2. ATYUHA	Red-vented bulbul ( <i>Molpastes haemorrhous</i> )	„
3. BABHRU-VATAHĀ	Brown tree-pie ( <i>Dendrocitta rufa</i> )	„
4. BHĀNGARĀJA	Shrike ( <i>Laniidae</i> )	„
5. CĀTAKA <i>Syn.:</i> KULINGA <i>Sū. 12</i> , 19/1	Tree sparrow ( <i>Passer montanus</i> )	„

TABLE I—(Contd.)

Name in Caraka, reference, and synonyms (if any) .	English and/or Latin name	Modern classification
6. CIRĀTI	Babbler ( <i>Timelidae</i> )	Bird
7. JIṄDIMĀNAKA	Toucan ( <i>Ramphastos piscivorous</i> )	„
8. DUNDUBHI	Grey hornbill ( <i>Lophoceros birostris</i> )	„
9. GOPAPUTRA	Cow-bird ( <i>Molothrus</i> )	„
10. JATI	Indian hoopoe ( <i>Upupa indica</i> )	„
11. JIVAJIVAKA <i>Syn.:</i> JIVĀṄJIVA <i>In.</i> 12, 75	Peacock pheasant ( <i>Chalcurus</i> )	„
12. KAIRĀTA	Red-faced malkoha ( <i>Pheanicophaeus pyrrhocephalus</i> )	„
13. KALĀVIṄKA	House sparrow ( <i>Passer domesticus</i> )	„
14. KAṄKU	Blossom-headed parakeet ( <i>Torquatus rosa</i> )	„
15. KAPOTA	Spotted pigeon ( <i>Chalosphaps indica</i> )	„
16. KOKILA <i>Syn.:</i> VĀSANTAKA <i>Ci.</i> 14, 56	Indian koel ( <i>Endynamis honorata</i> )	„
17. KOJAṄTHI	Green-bill coucal ( <i>Centropus chlorhynchus</i> )	„
18. KULIṄGAKA	Weaver bird (sparrow hawk) ( <i>Ploceus bengalensis</i> )	„
19. LATTAṄĀKA	Paradise flycatcher ( <i>Muscicapidae techitrea</i> )	„
20. LAṄVĀ	Pied flycatcher ( <i>Muscicapidae atricapilla</i> )	„
21. LOHAPRṄSTA	King-fisher ( <i>Alcedo isspida</i> )	„
22. PĀKKĀRA	Green barbet ( <i>Threiceryx zeylonicus</i> )	„
23. PĀṄDANAVIKA	Wood pigeon ( <i>Columba palumbas</i> )	„
24. PĀRĀVATA	Pigeon ( <i>Columba treron</i> )	„
25. PRIYĀTMAJĀ	Indian babbler ( <i>Argya caudata</i> )	„
26. SĀRAṄGA	Ringneck parakeet ( <i>Palaeonis torquatus</i> )	„
27. ŠARIṄKĀ	Mynah ( <i>Turdus salica</i> )	„
28. ŠATAPATRA	Black wood-pecker ( <i>Picus martius</i> )	„
29. ŠUKA	Green parakeet ( <i>Psittacula spengeli</i> )	„
30. YAṄTHIKĀ	Sun bird ( <i>Nectarinidae</i> )	„
KRMI-VARGA <i>Sū.</i> 19, 4/9 (a) <i>Living in the body excretions</i>	Parasites inhabiting the living body	Nematoda
1. YŪKĀ		
2. PIPILIKĀ		
(b) <i>Living in the blood</i>		
3. AUDUMBARA		
4. JANTUMĀTĀRA		

TABLE I—(Contd.)

Name in Caraka, reference, and synonyms (if any)	English and/or Latin name	Modern classification
5. KEŚADA		
6. LOMADA		
7. LOMADVIPA		
8. SAURASA		
	(c) <i>Living in the mucus and phlegm</i>	
9. ANTRADA		
10. CURU		
11. DARBHA-PUŞPA		
12. HRDAYADA		
13. MAHĀGUDA		
14. SAUGANDHIKA		
15. UDARAVEŞTA		
	(d) <i>Living in the faeces</i>	
16. KAKERUKA		
17. LELIHA		
18. MAKERUKA		
19. SAŠULAKA		
20. SAUSURADA		
<b>GOMĀYU-VARGA Ci. 23, 9, 10</b>		Creatures with poisonous fangs or stings
1. ĀKHU	Rat ( <i>Mus rutilus</i> )	Mammal
2. AŚIVIṢA	Snake ( <i>Ophidia</i> )	Reptile
3. JALAUKAS	Leech ( <i>Hirundinidae</i> )	Chaetopoda
4. KRKANTAKA	A type of scorpion ( <i>Palamnaeus</i> )	Arachnida
5. KUDYAKITAKA	Wall lizard ( <i>Lacerta muralis</i> )	Reptile
6. LUTĀ	Spider ( <i>Lycosidae</i> )	Arachnida
7. MANDŪKA	Frog ( <i>Rana</i> )	Amphibia
8. MATSYA	Fish ( <i>Pisces</i> )	Pisces
9. NAKULA	Mongoose ( <i>Herpestes mungo</i> )	Mammal
10. PATAṄGA	Flying insects	Hymenoptera & Diptera
11. ŠĀRDŪLA	Tiger ( <i>Felis tigris</i> )	Mammal
12. ŠATAPADĪ	Centipede ( <i>Chilopoda</i> )	Arthropoda
13. SIMHA	Lion ( <i>Felis leo</i> )	Mammal
14. STHAGIKĀ MAKŠIKĀ	Hornet or wasp ( <i>Vespa</i> )	Hymenoptera

TABLE I: LIVING CREATURES

37

TABLE I—(Contd.)

Name in Caraka, reference, and synonyms (if any)	English and/or Latin name	Modern classification
15. ŠVAN	Dog ( <i>Canis familiaris</i> )	Mammal
16. TARAKŠU	Hyena ( <i>Hyaena striatus</i> )	"
17. VIŠVAMBHARA	Scorpion ( <i>Palamnaeus</i> )	Arachnida
SARPA-VARGA <i>Sū. 27</i> , 213	Snakes ( <i>Ophidia</i> )	Reptiles
SARPA		
<i>Syn.:</i>		
AHI <i>Ci. 10</i> , 31		
URAGA <i>Ci. 27</i> , 31		
ĀŚIVIṢA <i>Ci. 13</i> , 9		
1. BHUJAGAPATI <i>Ci. 23</i> , 99	King cobra ( <i>Naja bungarus</i> )	"
2. DARVIKARA-SARPA <i>Ci. 23</i> , 124	Viper ( <i>Bitis echis</i> )	"
3. GODHERAKA-SARPA <i>Ci. 23</i> , 134	Hybrid of the snake and the iguana (?)	"
4. GONASA-SARPA <i>Ci. 23</i> , 136	?	"
5. KRṢNASARPA <i>Ci. 23</i> , 124	A kind of poisonus snake	"
6. MANDALI-SARPA <i>Ci. 23</i> , 124	Indian cobra ( <i>Naja tripudiana</i> )	"
7. PATRAGA <i>Ci. 23</i> , 84	Tree-snake ( <i>Chrysopelea ornata</i> )	"
8. RAJIMAN-SARPA <i>Ci. 23</i> , 124	Striped snake with spots on its body	"
9. TAKŠAKA <i>Ci. 23</i> , 195	<i>Trimeresurus gramineus</i> ?	"
<b>UNCLASSIFIED</b>		
1. AJA <i>Sū. 2</i> , 93	Goat ( <i>Capra hircus</i> )	Mammal
<i>Syn.:</i>		
BASTA <i>Sū. 25</i> , 39		
CHĀGA <i>Ci. 23</i> , 77		
2. AVI	Sheep ( <i>Ovis</i> )	"
<i>Syn.:</i>		
ĀVIKA <i>Sū. 27</i> , 223		
MESA <i>Ci. 17</i> , 116		
URABHRA <i>Sū. 6</i> , 43		
3. DVIKAKUDA <i>Ci. 14</i> , 207	Two-humped camel ( <i>Camelus bactrianus</i> )	"
4. GANDUPADA <i>Ci. 8</i> , 151	Earthworm ( <i>Lumbicidae</i> )	Annelida
5. JĀTUKA <i>Ci. 24</i> , 48	Lac insect ( <i>Coccus lacca</i> )	Coccifera
6. MADHUMAKSIĀ <i>Sū. 5</i> , 43	Honey bee ( <i>Apis indica</i> )	Hymenoptera
7. MADHU-BHRAMARA <i>Sū. 27</i> , 243	Black honey-bee ( <i>Apis dorsata</i> )	"
8. MAKŠIKĀ <i>Ci. 20</i> , 29	House-fly ( <i>Musca domestica</i> )	Diptera
9. MĀNUṢA <i>Sū. 27</i> , 224	Man ( <i>Homo sapiens</i> )	Mammal
10. MAŠAKA <i>In. 2</i> , 21	Mosquito ( <i>Culicidae</i> )	Diptera
11. MATSYAKA <i>Sā. 8</i> , 19	Silver-fish ( <i>Lepisma saccharina</i> )	Thysanura
12. PIPILIKĀ <i>Ci. 23</i> , 187	Ant ( <i>Formicoida</i> )	Hymenoptera
13. RĀJAHAMSA <i>Sū. 12</i> , 18/1	Royal Chinese swan ( <i>Cygnus cygnoides</i> )	Bird
14. VASTRAKRMI <i>Ci. 23</i> , 100	Cloth-worm ( <i>Tinea</i> )	Lepidoptera
15. YŪKĀ <i>Vi. 7</i> , 10	Body and head louse ( <i>Pediculus</i> )	Anoplura

## CARAKA SAMHITA

TABLE 2  
*Medicinal Substances of Animal Origin and their Uses*

Name and synonyms in Caraka, with references	English equivalent	Mode of use or application	Medicinal uses in
1. AHI Ci. <b>10</b> , 51	Snake	Inhalation of the fumes when burnt	Epilepsy
2. AHI-PURISA Ci. <b>10</b> , 51	Snake-dung	As above	Insanity
3. AJA-KSIRA Ci. <b>5</b> , 133; <b>8</b> , 116; <b>11</b> , 50; <b>19</b> , 84; <b>25</b> , 40; <b>29</b> , 53, 133	Goat's milk	(a) External—in ointment (b) Internal—in diet (c) Internal—in medicated ghee (d) Internal—as ingredient of sweetened jelly	(a) Inflammation (b) Fever, enlarged spleen (c) Debility, haemothermia, etc. (d) Blood dysentery
4. AJA-MAMSA Ci. <b>11</b> , 83; <b>18</b> , 44; Ka. <b>1</b> , 28 <i>Syn.:</i> CHĀGA-MĀMSA Ci. <b>23</b> , 67	Goat's flesh	(a) Local application for absorption of venoms (b) Internal—as soup in diet (c) Internal—as ingredient of ghee (d) Internal—the meat juice used in prescription	(a) Poisonous bites (b) Wasting diseases (c) Spleen disease; pain in the groin and pelvis (d) Anaemia, fistula, internal worms
5. AJA-MEDAS Si. <b>25</b> , 38; Ci. <b>11</b> , 27	Goat's fat	Internal—in diet	Debility
6. AJA-MŪTRA Si. <b>1</b> , 93, 100; Ci. <b>30</b> , 80	Urine of the she-goat	(a) External—for local massage (b) External—in medicated oil for local application (c) Internal—as drink	(a) Diseases of the spleen and stomach; piles, poisonous bites (b) Vaginal disorders (c) Jaundice, excessive bile secretion
7. AJA-RUDHIRA Ci. <b>19</b> , 74; <b>30</b> , 101; Si. <b>6</b> , 82; <b>10</b> , 41	Goat's blood	(a) As ingredient of enema (b) Internal—ingredient of liquid mixture	(a) Colic pain (b) Dysentery, vomiting, fainting, anæmorrhœa
8. AKHU-MĀMSA Ci. <b>23</b> , 100, 147; <b>26</b> , 175 <i>Syn.:</i> MUŚIKA-MĀMSA Si. <b>12</b> , 18/5	Flesh of mouse and rat	(a) As ingredient of enema (b) Internal—as ingredient of medicinal ghee	(a) Acute constipation, retention of urine (b) Diseases of the head
9. AŚVA-KARISA Si. <b>14</b> , 26, 60; Vi. <b>7</b> , 22; Ci. <b>14</b> , 41; <b>17</b> , 116, 130, 134	Horse-dung	(a) External—as fumigant (b) External—in poultices (c) Internal—in decoction (d) Internal—as juice in mixture	(a) As diaphoretic (b) & (c) Piles (d) Haemothermia, hiccup
10. AŚVĀ-KṢIRA Ci. <b>11</b> , 83	Mare's milk	As diet	Consumption

TABLE 2: MEDICINAL SUBSTANCES OF ANIMAL ORIGIN

11. AVI-ŚONITA Ci. <b>30</b> , 101; Si. <b>10</b> , 41 <i>Syn.:</i> MEṢA-RAKTA Ci. <b>19</b> , 40	Sheep's blood	(a) As ingredient of rectal enema (b) Internal—in mixtures	(a) Haemorrhage (b) Amenorrhoea
12. AVI-MŪTRA Sū. <b>1</b> , 93, 100; Ci. <b>10</b> , 48; <b>26</b> , Sheep's urine 185		(a) External—in nasal medication (b) External—in eye application (c) Internal—in infusion	(a) Diseases of the head (b) Epilepsy, insanity (c) Imbalance of the humors
13. BALĀKA-ASTHI Ci. <b>23</b> , 98	Bones of the crane	Burnt for fumigation	As vermicide and general disinfectant
14. BHUJAGPATI-ŚIRSA Ci. <b>23</b> , 99	Hood of the king cobra	Inhalation of the fumes when burnt	Oedema, toxicosis, poisonous bites
15. CAKORA Ci. <b>2/1</b> , 46; <b>3</b> , 190; <b>23</b> , 110; Si. <b>12</b> , 19/1	Greek partridge	(a) External—extract of the flesh and marrow as ingredient of nutritive enema (b) Internal—as soup in diet	(a) Fever, debility (b) Debility, anaemia, fevers, female diseases
16. GAKORA-ANDA Sū. <b>27</b> , 85; Ci. <b>11</b> , 25	Eggs of the Greek partridge	(a) Internal—in diet (b) Internal—as ingredient of mixture	(a) Seminal weakness (b) Profuse bleeding
17. CARĀNAYUDHA-MĀMSA Ci. <b>3</b> , 197	Fowl's flesh	Internal—in diet	Fever, haemorrhage
18. CĀSA In. <b>12</b> , 76; Ci. <b>8</b> , 150; <b>17</b> , 118	The blue jay	(a) External—skin, bones and feathers burnt for fumigation (b) Internal—in diet	(a) Congestion of the respiratory tract (b) Consumption
19. CATAKA-ANDA Sū. <b>27</b> , 86	Sparrow's egg	Internal—in diet	Seminal weakness, cough, cardiac disorders
20. CATAKA-MĀMSA Sū. <b>27</b> , 85; Ci. <b>2/2</b> , 10; Flesh of the sparrow <b>2/4</b> , 6; Si. <b>12</b> , 18/8, 19/1		(a) Ingredient of nutritive enema (b) Internal—in diet	(a) Rheumatism, debility, female diseases, etc. (b) Sexual debility, general weakness
21. DAKṢA-ANDA Ci. <b>11</b> , 25	Egg of the common fowl	Internal—in diet	Profuse bleeding
22. DAKṢA-MĀLA Ci. <b>25</b> , 53 <i>Syn.:</i> KUKKUTA-SAKRT Ci. <b>14</b> , 54	Droppings of the common fowl	(a) External—local application (b) External—in ointment	(a) Suppurated swellings (b) Piles
23. DAKṢA-MĀMSA Ci. <b>8</b> , 66, 158; <b>11</b> , 25 <i>Syn.:</i> KUKKUTA-MĀMSA Ci. <b>2/1</b> , 48; <b>23</b> , 67	Flesh of the common fowl	(a) External—local application for absorption of venom (b) Internal—in diet (c) Internal—the meat juice in diet	(a) Poisonous bites (b) Acute constipation, jaundice, dysentery, etc. (c) Bleeding piles, sexual debility Amenorrhoea, fainting, diarrhoea, etc.
24. DAKṢA-ŚONITA Si. <b>10</b> , 41	Blood of the common fowl	Internal—in mixture	
25. DHĀRTARĀSTRA-MĀMSA Sū. <b>27</b> , 85	Flesh of the black-legged swan	Internal—as soup in diet	Seminal weakness, pulmonary weakness

TABLE 2  
*Medicinal Substances of Animal Origin and their Uses—(Contd.)*

Name and synonyms in Caraka, with references	English equivalent	Mode of use or application	Medicinal uses in
26. DVIKAKUDA-RASA Gī. 14, 207	Meat-juice of the two-humped camel	Internal—in diet	Bleeding piles
27. DVIŚAPHA-CARMAN, KṢURA, ŚRNGA Gī. 17, 118	The skin, hooves and horns of cloven-footed animals	Inhalation of the fumes when burnt	Congestion of the respiratory tract
28. EKAŚAPHA-PAYAS Sū. 27, 221	Milk of solidungulate animals	Internal—in diet	General weakness
29. ENA-MAMSA Sū. 5, 5; 6, 43; 13, 11; 15, 7; 22, 25; 27, 46, 271; Śā. 8, 24; Gī. 3, 191; 4, 41; 19, 30; 23, 226; 24, 138	Flesh of the antelope	Internal—as soup in diet	Fever, emaciation, debility, constipation, toxicosis, etc.
30. ENA-ŚONITA Gī. 19, 74; 30, 101; Sū. 6, 82; 10, 41	Blood of the antelope	(a) Ingredient of rectal enema (b) Internal—in mixture	(a) Colic pain (b) Amenorrhoea, nausea, fainting, collapse, etc.
31. GAJA-ASTHI Gī. 14, 55	Elephant's bones	External—the powder as ingredient of ointment	Piles
32. GAJA-MAMSA Gī. 2/2, 29; 6, 8, 154; 9, 82; 14, 56; 17, 116; 18, 20; 23, 119	Elephant's flesh	Internal—in diet	Debility
33. GAJAMUKTIKA Gī. 23, 252	?	Worn as talisman	Antidote for poisonous bites
34. GAJA-ŚAKRT Gī. 17, 116 Syn.: KUNJARA-PURĪṢA Gī. 14, 51	Elephant's dung	(a) Inhalation of the fumes when burnt (b) Internal—the aqueous extract taken with honey	(a) Epilepsy (b) Increase of phlegm or bile
35. GANDUPADA Gī. 8, 151	Earth-worms	Internal—in diet, after frying in ghee	Consumption
36. GO-CARMAN Gī. 9, 49	Cow-hide	Internal—ashes, made ingredient of medicinal ghee	Insanity
37. GODHĀ-MĀMSA Sū. 2, 33; 27, 38, 70; Gī. 7, 88; 12, 62; 14, 126; 23, 134, 186; Sū. 12, 18/5	Flesh of the iguana	(a) External—local application for absorption of venom (b) Ingredient of nutritive enema (c) External—the meat juice as skin lotion (d) Internal—as soup in diet	(a) Poisonous bites (b) Major wounds, fractures, micturition, peristalsis (c) Persistent skin diseases (d) Rheumatic conditions, debility

38. GO-KSIRĀ Sū. 1, 106; Śā. 8, 24

Sym.:  
GO-PAYAS Ci. 2/1, 35, etc.;  
Sī. 10, 41

Cow's milk

39. GO-KSIRĀ Sū. 1, 106; Śā. 8, 24	Flesh of the cow	(a) External—in medicated oil (b) External—in ointment (c) Ingredient of nutritive enema (d) Internal—in diet (e) Internal—in mixture (f) Internal—in medicated ghee (g) Internal—in linetus (h) Internal—ingredient of candied sweets	(a) Burns, stiffness, etc. (b) Dislocation, fractures, etc. (c) Anaemia, amenorrhoea (d) Debility, spleen diseases (e) Jaundice, consumption, etc. (f) Menstrual disorders, tendency to abortion (g) and (h) Heart diseases, excessive bile secretion, etc.
40. GO-MŪTRA Sū. 1, 93; 3, 13, etc.; Vi. 8, 142; Ci. 5, 178, etc.; Kā. 7, 13, etc.; Sī. 8, 18, etc.	Urine of the cow	(a) External—as lotion (b) External—in ointment (c) Internal—as drink (d) Internal—in medicated ghee	(a) Skin diseases (b) Pruritus, snake-bites, etc. (c) Jaundice, leucoderma, etc. (d) Insanity, epilepsy, etc.
41. GO-SAKRT Sū. 14, 26; Śā. 8, 10; Ci. 4, 68; 7, 57; 10, 12; 13, 130; 14, 41; 18, 91; 23, 46, 48; 25, 116	Cow-dung	(a) External—burnt for fumigation (b) External—ingredient of poultice (c) Internal—in medicated ghee (d) Internal—as aqueous extract with honey, etc.	(a) As diaphoretic (b) Skin lesions (c) Piles, poisoning, oedema, spleen diseases, etc. (d) Internal—in diet
42. GO-SARPIS Sū. 25, 38, 40; Ci. 2/2, 11; 2/4, 25	Cow's fat	Internal—in diet	Debility, rheumatism
43. GO-SRNGA Ci. 17, 79	Cow's horns	Inhalation of the fumes when burnt	Accumulation of phlegm
44. GO-SNAYU Ci. 17, 79	Cow's sinews	Inhalation of the fumes when burnt	Congestion of the respiratory tract
45. GRDHRA-MĀMSA Ci. 8, 150; 10, 51	Vulture's flesh	(a) Inhalation of the burning fumes (b) Internal—in diet	(a) Insanity (b) Consumption
46. GRDHRA-PAKṢA Ci. 10, 51	Wings of the vulture	Inhalation of the burning fumes	Insanity
47. HAMSA-ANDA Ci. 2/1, 49; Sī. 12, 7, 19	Swan's egg	Ingredient of nutritive enema	Fever, weakness, senility, gradual loss of sense perceptions
48. HAMSA-MĀMSA Sū. 13, 83; 27, 41, 66; Ci. 2/1, 41; 48; 2/2, 10; 6, 24; 8, 158; 23, 253; 26, 175	Flesh of the swan	(a) Internal—in diet (b) Internal—the meat-juice in diet (c) Internal—as ingredient of medicinal ghee	(a) Sallow complexion, emaciation (b) General weakness (c) Diseases of the head
49. HARINA-MĀMSA Śā. 8, 24; Ci. 3, 191; 4, 41; 14, 201; 19, 50; 23, 226	Venison	Internal—in diet	Fever, haemorrhage, diarrhoea, habitual constipation, toxic condition

TABLE 2: MEDICINAL SUBSTANCES OF ANIMAL ORIGIN

TABLE 2  
*Medicinal Substances of Animal Origin and their Uses—(Contd.)*

Name and synonyms in Caraka, with references	English equivalent	Mode of use or application	Medicinal uses in
50. HASTINI-MŪTRA <i>Sū. 1, 102; Ci. 7, 169</i>	Urine of the she-elephant	(a) External—as lotion (b) Internal—as drink	(a) Leucoderma (b) Dermatosis, helminthiasis
51. HASTINI-PAYAS <i>Sū. 27, 223</i>	Elephant's milk	Internal—in diet	Debility
52. JALAUKĀS <i>Ci. 14, 61; 21, 69, 119; 29, 36, 37</i>	Leech	Local application of the living creatures for blood-letting	Piles, vitiated blood, rheumatism of the joints
53. JAMBUKA-MŪTRA, PITTA, KARIṢĀ, NAKHĀ, CARMAN <i>Ci. 10, 51</i>	Urine, bile, dung, nails and hide of the jackal	(a) Inhalation of the burning fumes (b) External—in making ointment	(a) Epilepsy (b) Insanity
54. JANĀDAKA-CARMAN <i>Ci. 17, 118</i>	Animal hides	(a) Inhalation of the burning fumes (b) External—powdered ashes in ointment	(a) Hiccups (b) Congestion of phlegm
55. JATUKA-VASA <i>Ci. 14, 48</i>	Wax secreted by lac insects	(a) Inhalation of the burning fumes (b) External—local application	(a) & (b) Piles
56. JIVAJIVA-ANDA <i>Sū. 12, 19/1</i>	Egg of the peacock pheasant	Ingredient of nutritive enema	Debility, pectoral lesions, female diseases, recurrent fevers
57. KACCHAPA-RASA <i>Ci. 19, 38</i>	Meat juice of the small tortoise	Internal—in diet	Diarrhoea
58. KAKA-MAMSA <i>Ci. 8, 151</i>	Crow's flesh	(a) Internal—in food (b) Internal—as meat-juice in liquid mixture	(a) Emaciation, consumption (b) Poisonous bites
59. KAKA-PURISA <i>Ci. 10, 51</i>	Crow's droppings	Inhalation of the burning fumes	Epilepsy
60. KAKA-SONITA <i>Ci. 23, 182</i>	Crows' blood	External—as local application	Poisonous bites
61. KĀLAPOCCHAKA-MAMSA <i>Sū. 15, 7; 27, 46; Sū. 8, 24; Ci. 3, 191; 4, 41; 19, 50</i>	Flesh of the black-tailed deer	(a) Internal—in diet (b) Internal—as ingredient of soup	(a) Fever, haemothermia, tendency to abortion (b) Chronic diarrhoea
62. KALĀVINKA-PURISA <i>Ci. 25, 100</i>	Droppings of house sparrows	External—for local application	Non-healing wounds with granulation on the surface

TABLE 2: MEDICINAL SUBSTANCES OF ANIMAL ORIGIN

63. KAPINJALA-MĀMSA <i>Śi.</i> 5, 5; <b>6</b> , 43; <b>15</b> , 16, etc.; <i>Śā.</i> 8, 24; <i>Ci.</i> 3, 190; <b>4</b> , 41; <b>19</b> , 50, etc.	Flesh of the common part-ridge	(a) Internal—in diet (b) Internal—meat-juice used in diet	(a) Virginated breast-milk, tendency to abortion, etc. (b) Chronic diarrhoea, dysentery Excessive urination, haemothermia
64. KAPOTA-MĀMSA <i>Śi.</i> 26, 84; <b>27</b> , 52, 73; <i>Ci.</i> 4, 41; <b>23</b> , 203, 208	Flesh of the pigeon	Internal—in diet	
65. KAPOTA-PURĪSA <i>Ci.</i> 23, 207, 208; <b>25</b> , 53, 100	Pigeon's droppings	External—for local application	Poisonous bites, suppurations, granulated non-healing wounds
66. KARANDA-ANDA <i>Śi.</i> 27, 41; <i>Śi.</i> 12, 19/2	Duck's egg	Ingredient of nutritive enema	Sexual debility, pectoral lesion, spleen diseases, female disorder
67. KARKATAKA-RASA <i>Śi.</i> 12, 18/7	Crab-meat juice	Ingredient of nutritive enema	Sexual debility
68. KHANGA-MĀMSA <i>Śi.</i> 27, 39, 84; <i>Śā.</i> 8, 62; <i>Ci.</i> 8, 154	Rhinoceros flesh	Internal—in diet	Emaciation, pallor, etc.
69. KHARA-ASTHI <i>Śi.</i> 27, 35; <i>Śi.</i> 8, 34, 41; <i>Ci.</i> 6, 24; 7, 168	Bones of the ass	External—the ashes as ingredient of ointment	Leucoderma
70. KHARA-KARIṢA <i>Śi.</i> 14, 26, 60; <i>Ci.</i> 14, 41; 17, 116	Ass's dung	(a) Inhalation of the fumes when burnt (b) External—in ointment (c) Internal—in infusion with honey	(a) As diaphoretic (b) Piles (c) Hiccup, congestion of phlegm
71. KHARA-MĀMSA <i>Ci.</i> 8, 158	Ass's flesh	Internal—in diet	Emaciation
72. KHARA-MŪTRA <i>Śi.</i> 1, 104	Ass's urine	Internal—as drink	Epilepsy, insanity
73. KRAKARA-MĀMSA <i>Śi.</i> 27, 49; <i>Ci.</i> 4, 50	Snipe's flesh	Internal—in diet	Haemothermia
74. KRAVYĀDA-MĀMSA <i>Śi.</i> 22, 57	Flesh of carnivorous animals	Internal—in diet	
75. KRŚNASARPA-VASĀ <i>Ci.</i> 14, 48; <b>26</b> , 259 <i>Vi.</i> 7, 32; <i>Ci.</i> 1/1, 4, 51; 1/2, 4, etc.	Fat of the cobra	(a) Inhalation of the fumes when burnt (b) External—as local application	Consumption, piles (a) Piles (b) Eye-diseases
76. KSAUDRA <i>Śi.</i> 6, 39; <b>7</b> , 61, etc.; <i>Vi.</i> 7, 32; <i>Ci.</i> 1/1, 4, 51; 1/2, 4, etc.	Honey	(a) Internal—as an adjunct in many medicinal prescriptions (b) Internal—in diet	(a) & (b) All diseased and weak conditions
77. KURKUTA-ANDAKAPĀLA <i>Ci.</i> 26, 253	Shell of the hen's egg	External—as ingredient of ointment	Diseases of the vision, defects of the palate
78. KULINGA-ANDA <i>Śi.</i> 12, 19/1	Sparrow's egg	Ingredient of nutritive enema	As in Jivajiva-āṅḍa (No. 56)
79. KUÑJARA-NAKHA <i>Ci.</i> 10, 40	Elephant's nail	Inhalation of the fumes when burnt	Epilepsy

TABLE 2  
*Medicinal Substances of Animal Origin and their Uses—(Contd.)*

Name and synonyms in Caraka, with references	English equivalent	Mode of use or application	Medicinal uses in
80. KUPĀNGA-RASA Sū. 27, 45; Sā. 8, 24; Gi. 3, 19	Meat-juice of the antelope	Internal—in diet	Tendency to abortion in pregnancy, fever
81. KURARA-MŪTRA, NAKHA, PITTA, PURISĀ, CAÑGU, PAKṢA, Gi. 17, 118	Urine, nails, bile, droppings, beak and feathers of the osprey	(a) Inhalation of the fumes when burnt (b) External—ashes as ingredient of ointment	(a) & (b) Piles
82. KŪRMA-RASA Sū. 27, 40, 84; Gi. 5, 169; 14, 129	Meat juice of the large tortoise	Internal—in diet	Flatulence, rheumatism, etc.
83. KŪRMA-VASĀ Ci. 28, 128	Fat of the tortoise	External—as nasal medication	Flatulence, rheumatism, etc.
84. LĀKṢA (JATU) Gi. 9, 61; 11, 15, etc.	Lac	(a) As fumigator (b) Ingredient of cigars (c) Internal—in mixed decoction (d) Internal—in linctus (e) Internal—in medicated ghee (f) Internal—in pills	(a) As insecticide and vermicide (b) Hiccup, deep-seated phlegm (c) Ulcers and lesions of the thoracic cavity, dysuria, lithiasis, etc. (d) & (e) Toxicosis, skin eruptions, eye diseases, defects of vision, mouth diseases, fistula, etc. (f) Loss of skin pigment
85. LAVA-MĀMSA Sū. 5, 5; 6, 25, etc.; Sā. 8, 24; Ci. 3, 190; 4, 41, etc.	Flesh of the bustard quail	(a) Internal—in diet (b) Internal—the meat-juice as ingredient of soup	(a) Consumption, haemorrhage, tendency to abortion, etc. (b) Acute alcoholism, cardiac and pulmonary diseases, haemoptysis, chronic diarrhoea, etc.
86. LOPĀKA-MĀMSA Sū. 27, 36; Gi. 14, 126, 207 Syn.: SRGĀLA-MĀMSA	Flesh of the fox	(a) Internal—in diet (b) Internal—the meat-juice in diet	(a) Consumption, emaciation (b) Bleeding piles
87. MADHŪCCHIHTA Sā. 3, 16; Gi. 7, 121; 11, 17, etc.	Bee's wax	(a) Inhalation of burning fumes (b) As medium in cauterization (c) External—in ointment (d) External—in medicinal oil for massage (e) Internal—in mixture (f) Internal—in medicated ghee	(a) Cough, coryza, hiccup, etc. (b) Deep-seated pus wounds (c) Dermatosis, painful wounds (d) Rheumatic pain in joints, fractures and dislocations (e) Pain in hypogastric region (f) Biliousness, haemothermia, etc.

TABLE 2: MEDICINAL SUBSTANCES OF ANIMAL ORIGIN

88. MAHISA-MAMSA Ci. 2/1, 42; 8, 158, etc.; Sī. 12, 19/2	Buffalo-meat	(a) The meat-juice as ingredient of nutritive enema (b) Internal—in diet (c) Internal—the meat-juice in diet	(a) Debility, senile decay, female diseases, etc. (b) Consumption, emaciation (c) Sexual debility
89. MAHISA-SONITA Sī. 10, 41	Buffalo-blood	Ingredient of nutritive enema	Haemorrhage
90. MAHISA-DADHI Ci. 26, 88	Curds from buffalo's milk	Internal—in medicated ghee	Cough, hiccup, anaemia, jaundice, etc.
91. MAHISI-KSIRA Sū. 25, 40; 27, 219; Ci. 11, 83; 12, 26, etc.; Sī. 10, 40; 12, 19/1	Buffalo's milk	(a) Ingredient of nutritive enema (b) Internal—to be taken with cow's urine (c) Internal—in medicated ghee (d) Internal—in diet	(a) Seminal weakness, recurrent fever, senile decay, female disorders, etc. (b) Oedema (c) Consumptive cough (d) Insomnia, cough
92. MAHISI-MŪTRA Sū. 1, 102; Ci. 13, 151; 15, 181	Urine of the she-buffalo	(a) Internal—ingredient of liquid mixture (b) Internal—powder prepared by mixing the urine with plants, followed by incineration	(a) Piles, oedema, abdominal diseases (b) Loss of appetite
93. MAHISI-GHRITA Ci. 4, 101; 16, 53, 134; 23, 24 <sup>j</sup>	Buffalo-ghee	(a) External—ingredient of nasal application (b) Internal—ingredient of medi- cated ghee	(a) Bleeding from the nose Poisonous bites, jaundice, etc. (b) In various diseases
94. MAKSIKA-MADHU Sū. 5, 43; 27, 243, etc.; Bee's honey Ci. 4, 83; 11, 20, etc.		(a) External—for local applica- tion with other ingredients (b) Internal—as an adjunct to many prescriptions	(a) Mouth diseases, sore throat (b) In various diseases
95. MAKŠIKA-VIŠTHĀ Ci. 17, 132; 30, 325	Droppings of the house-fly	(a) External—in nasal erthine (b) Internal—as pill	(a) Hiccup (b) Vomiting
96. MARJĀRA-MAMSA Sī. 12, 18/5	Cat's flesh	The meat-juice as ingredient of nutritive enema	The meat-juice as ingredient of Debility, broken ribs, misperistal- sis, retention of urine, etc.
97. MARJĀRA-NAKHA, PIITTA, GARMAN, LOMAN, MŪTRA, PURIṢA, Ci. 9, 75; 10, 41	Nails, bile, skin, fur, urine, and droppings of the cat	(a) Inhalation of the fumes (b) External—the ashes as ingre- dient of eye-ointment (c) External—in nasal medication	(a) & (b) Insanity (c) Epilepsy, insanity
98. MATSYA-ĀMISA Sī. 3, 19; 5, 11, etc.; Ci. 17, 74; 24, 124, etc.	Flesh of fishes	(a) External—as warm poultice (b) External—the flesh-juice as ingredient of medicated oil	(a) & (b) Rheumatic conditions (c) Indigestion, intestinal worms, debility

TABLE 2  
*Medicinal Substances of Animal Origin and their Uses—(Contd.)*

Name and synonyms in Caraka, with references	English equivalent	Mode of use or application	Medicinal uses in
99. MATSYA-VASA Ci. 25, 76; 28, 128	Fish oil	(a) External—in nasal medication (b) Internal—as ingredient of jellied sweets	(a) Debility (b) Painful wounds
100. MATSYA-PITTA Ci. 30, 103	Fish bile	External—for local application	Vaginal tumours
101. MAYŪRA-MĀMSA Sū. 13, 83; Ci. 4, 50; 5, 110; 10, 39; 12, 62, etc. Syn.: SIKHI-MĀMSA Sū. 27, 58; Sū. 8, 28 BARHI-MĀMSA Ci. 8, 150	Flesh of the peacock	(a) The meat-juice as ingredient of nutritive enema (b) External—local application for absorption of venom (c) External—in nasal medication (d) Internal—in diet (e) Internal—the meat-juice in mixture	(a) Debility, rheumatism of the lower body (b) Poisonous bites (c) Heart disease, facial paralysis; ear, nose and throat diseases (d) Emaciation, seminal weakness, consumption, etc. (e) Oedema, diarrhoea, cardiac troubles, retarded development of the foetus
102. MAYŪRA-BARHA Ci. 23, 98	Peacock's feathers	Burnt for fumigation	As vermicide, insecticide, and general disinfectant
103. MAYŪRA-PADANALA Ci. 17, 117	Talons of the peacock	Internal—the burnt ashes as ingredient of linctus	Hiccup, congestion of phlegm
104. MESA-SAKRT Ci. 17, 116	Dung of the ram	Internal—in aqueous infusion with honey	Hiccup, congestion of phlegm
105. MRGA-RASA Ci. 19, 73; Ka. 12, 8; Sū. 12, 18/10	Meat-juice of herbivorous forest animals	(a) Ingredient of nutritive enema (b) Internal—ingredient of soup	(a) Rheumatism of the lower limbs and organs (b) Enlarged spleen, dysentery
106. MUKTĀ Ci. 17, 125	Pearl	Internal—powdered and made into linctus	Hiccup, cough
107. NAKULA-MĀMSA Ci. 8, 152; Sū. 12, 18/5	Flesh of the mongoose	(a) Ingredient of nutritive enema (b) Internal—in diet	(a) Sexual debility (b) Consumption
108. NAKULA-PURISĀ Ci. 10, 51	Dung of the mongoose	Inhalation of the fumes when burnt	Epilepsy, insanity
109. NAKRA-ANDA Ci. 2/2, 28	Crocodile egg	Internal—as ingredient of sweetened pancakes	Seminal weakness, sexual debility

TABLE 2: MEDICINAL SUBSTANCES OF ANIMAL ORIGIN

110. NAKRA-RETAS Ci. 2/1, 48	The sperm of the crocodile	Internal—in diet, cooked with fowl's flesh	As a powerful aphrodisiac
111. NAKRA-VASĀ Ci. 28, 128	Crocodile fat	External—in nasal medication	Rheumatism of the joints
112. NARI-KSIRA Sz. 27, 224; G. 15, 230; 17, 131; 22, 23	Human milk	(a) External—as ingredient of nasal medication (b) External—in eye-ointment (c) Internal—in diet	(a) Haemothermia, hiccup, excessive thirst (b) Ophthalmia (c) Excessive hunger, emaciation, debility
113. PĀNDAVIKA-MĀMSA Sz. 17, 56	Flesh of the wood-pigeon	Internal—in diet	Debility, emaciation
114. PARĀVATA-RASA Ci. 4, 41; 19, 72, 22, 29	Meat-juice of the dove	Internal—in diet	Haemothermia, excessive thirst, dysentery
115. PARĀVATA-ŚAKRT Ci. 14, 55	Droppings of the dove	External—in ointment	Piles
116. PIPILIKA Ci. 13, 187	Ants of the big black species	External—(vide text, p. 24)	Intestinal perforation
117. PLAVA-ASTHI Ci. 26, 246	Bones of the pelican	Surgical use (vide text, p. 24) External—the ashes as ingredient of eye-ointment	Eye diseases
118. PRASAHAKSIRA Ci. 29, 137	Milk of the tearer group of animals (vide Table 1)	External—as ingredient of poultice	Stiffness, cramps, prickling pain, swelling
119. PRASAHAMĀMSA Ci. 8, 160; 15, 210; 18, 156; 24, 124	Flesh of the tearer group of animals	(a) External—as poultice (b) Internal—in diet (c) Internal—the meat-juice as diet	(a) Stiffness, cramps, prickling pain, swelling (b) Indigestion, loss of appetite, consumption (c) Painful oedema of the groin and buttocks
120. PRATUDA-MĀMSA Ci. 6, 16; 8, 161, 185; 29, 50	Flesh of the pecker group of birds (Table 1)	(a) Internal—in diet (b) Internal—the meat-juice as diet	(a) Consumption (b) Urinary disorders, rheumatism, etc.
121. PRATUDA-VASĀ Ci. 29, 74	Fat of the pecker group of birds	External—as ingredient of medicated ghee	Rheumatism
122. PRAVĀLA (VIDRŪNA) Ci. 1/1, 58; 1/4, 22; 17, 125; 26, 246	Coral	(a) External—powdered and used in medicated ghee (b) External—powdered and used in eye-ointment (c) Internal—as infusion of the powder in rice-water (d) Internal—the powder made into linctus	(a) Acute spreading inflammation (b) Eye-diseases (c) Dysuria (d) Hiccup, cough
123. PRṢAD-RASA Ci. 3, 191	Meat-juice of the spotted deer	(a) Ingredient of nutritive enema (b) Internal—in diet	(a) As in Jivajiva-anda (56) (b) Fever, toxicosis

TABLE 2  
*Medicinal Substances of Animal Origin and their Uses—(Contd.)*

Name and synonyms in Caraka, with references	English equivalent	Mode of use or application	Medicinal uses in
124. RAJAHAMSA-RASA <i>Si.</i> <b>12</b> , 18/1	Meat-juice of the swan	Ingredient of nutritive enema	Weakness, oligospermia, sexual debility
125. RKṢA-MĀMSA <i>Ci.</i> <b>8</b> , 153	Bear's flesh	Internal—in diet	Consumption
126. RKṢA-VASA <i>Ci.</i> <b>26</b> , 47; <b>30</b> , 112	Bear's fat	(a) External—local application (b) Internal—used in decoction	(a) Prolapsed uterus (b) Dysuria
127. ROHITA-ĀMISA <i>Ci.</i> <b>2/4</b> , 18; <i>Si.</i> <b>12</b> , 18/4	Flesh of the red carp fish	Internal—in diet	Indigestion, weakness, sexual debility
128. ROHITA-PITTA <i>Ci.</i> <b>23</b> , 183	Bile of the red carp fish	External—as ingredient of eye-ointment	Poisonous bites in the region of the eyes
129. ŠALLAKA-CARMAN, LOMAN, MŪTRA, NAKHA, PITTA, ŠAKRT <i>Ci.</i> <b>9</b> , 75	The hide, fur, urine, nails, bile, and droppings of the porcupine	(a) Inhalation of the fumes when burnt (b) External—the ashes as ingre- dient of ointment	(a) Insanity (b) Epilepsy
130. ŠALLAKA-ASTHI, <i>Ci.</i> <b>17</b> , 117	Bones and quills of the porcupine	Internal—the ashes as ingredient of linctus	Severe hiccup
131. ŠALLAKA-MĀMSA <i>Sū.</i> <b>27</b> , 71; <i>Ci.</i> <b>17</b> , 112	Flesh of the porcupine	(a) The meat-juice as ingredient of nutritive enema (b) Internal—in diet (c) Internal—the meat-juice in liquid mixture	(a) Severe injuries, fracture, uraemia, constipation (b) Loss of appetite, congestion of phlegm, etc. (c) Flatulence, rheumatism
132. SAMBHARA-MĀMSA <i>Sū.</i> <b>27</b> , 46; Šā. <b>8</b> , 24	Flesh of the sambhara deer	Internal—in diet'	Tendency to abortion in pregnancy
133. SANKHA-CŪRNA <i>Sū.</i> <b>27</b> , 40; <i>Ci.</i> <b>3</b> , 262; <b>4</b> , 79, etc.	Conch-shell powder	(a) External in ointment (b) External—in poultice (c) Internal—in linctus	(a) Persistent skin diseases (b) Eye-diseases (c) Cough, hiccup
134. ŠAPHARI <i>Ci.</i> <b>2/4</b> , 17	A kind of small fish	Internal—in diet	Sexual debility
135. SARASA-ANDA <i>Si.</i> <b>12</b> , 17, 19/2	Crane's egg	Ingredient of nutritive enema	Seminal weakness, debility
136. SARASA-ASTHI <i>Ci.</i> <b>26</b> , 55	Bones of the crane	Internal—powdered and used as ingredient of medicine	Dysuria
137. SARPA-NIRMOKA <i>Ci.</i> <b>14</b> , 49	Cast-off slough of the snake	Inhalation of the fumes when burnt	Piles

TABLE 2: MEDICINAL SUBSTANCES OF ANIMAL ORIGIN

138. ŠAŠA-MĀMSA <i>Sū. 15, 7; 27, 45, 76; Šā. 8,</i> 24; <i>Ci. 3, 19; 4, 41; 26, 175</i> , etc.	Flesh of the rabbit or hare ( <i>a</i> ) Internal—in diet ( <i>b</i> ) Internal—the meat-juice used in medicated ghee	( <i>a</i> ) Fever, mild rheumatism, alcoholism, haemothermia ( <i>b</i> ) Diseases of the head
139. ŠIKHI-ANPĀ <i>Sī. 12, 17, 19/1, 24</i> <i>Sym.:</i> BARHI-ANPĀ <i>Ci. 2/1, 49</i>	Egg of the pea-hen ( <i>a</i> ) Ingredient of nutritive enema ( <i>b</i> ) Internal—in diet	( <i>a</i> ) As in Jivajiva-anda (56) ( <i>b</i> ) Seminal weakness
140. ŠIKHI-PĀDA <i>Ci. 18, 170</i>	Peacock's claws Peacock's bile	Internal—the ashes as ingredient of medicated ghee ( <i>a</i> ) External—in ointment ( <i>b</i> ) Internal—in pills ( <i>c</i> ) Internal—in medicated ghee
141. ŠIKHI-PITTA <i>Ci. 7, 170; 23, 51, 217</i>	Peacock's bile Flesh of the lion Urine of the lion	( <i>a</i> ) Leucoderma ( <i>b</i> ) Poisoning ( <i>c</i> ) Poisonous bites
142. SIMHA-MĀMSA <i>Ci. 8, 153</i>	Lion's fat	Consumption
143. SIMHA-MŪTRA <i>Ci. 10, 41</i>	Jackal's urine	Epilepsy
144. SIMHA-VĀSA <i>Ci. 3, 306</i>	Bile of the jackal	Recurrent fever
145. SRGĀLA-NŪTRA <i>Ci. 10, 41</i>	Pork	Epilepsy
146. SRGĀLA-PITTA <i>Ci. 9, 67</i>	Dog's urine	Eye diseases
147. ŠUKARA-MĀMSA <i>Ci. 17, 74</i>	Dog's bile	Hiccup
148. ŠVA-MŪTRA <i>Ci. 10, 41</i>	Inhalation of the fumes when burnt	Epilepsy
149. ŠVA-PITTA <i>Ci. 10, 50</i>		Epilepsy
150. ŠVĀVIT-MĀMSA <i>Ci. 14, 126; 17, 112</i>	Flesh of the pangolin	Hiccup, rheumatism
151. SYENA-RASA <i>Sū. 27, 36</i>	Meat-juice of the hawk	For proper growth of the foetus
152. TAMRACŪDA-RASA <i>Sū. 2, 32; Šā. 8, 28</i>	Meat-juice of the red-crested cock	Diseases of the urethral passage, abnormal growth of the foetus
153. TARAKSU-MĀMSA <i>Ci. 8, 153; Sī. 12, 19/1</i>	Flesh of the hyena Flesh of the grey partridge	( <i>a</i> ) Ingredient of nutritive enema ( <i>b</i> ) Internal—in diet
154. TITTIRI-MĀMSA <i>Šā. 8, 28; Ci. 2/1, 41;</i> <i>II, 70, etc.</i>	( <i>a</i> ) Internal—as ingredient of sweetened jelly ( <i>b</i> ) Internal—in diet	( <i>a</i> ) Rheumatism, emaciation, menstrual disorders, sterility in women ( <i>b</i> ) Constipation, piles, jaundice, etc.

TABLE 2  
*Medicinal Substances of Animal Origin and their Uses—(Contd.)*

Name and synonyms in Caraka, with references	English equivalent	Mode of use or application	Medicinal uses in
155. ULÜKA-CARMAN, MŪTRA, NAKHA, PURISA, PITTA Gi. 9, 75	Skin, urine, nails, dung and bile of the owl	(a) Inhalation of the fumes when burnt (b) External—prepared for local application	(a) & (b) Insanity
156. ULÜKA-MĀMSA Ci. 8, 150	Flesh of the owl	Internal—in diet	Consumption
157. UṢTRA-KARIṢA Sū. 14, 26; Gi. 17, 116	Camel-dung	Burnt for fumigation	As a diaphoretic
158. UṢTRA-MĀMSA Ci. 8, 158; 14, 126	Flesh of the camel	Internal—in diet	Emaciation, flatulence
159. UṢTRA-MŪTRA Sū. 1, 103	Camel's urine	Internal—as drink	Hiccup, cough, piles
160. UṢTRA-VASA Ci. 14, 48	Camel's fat	(a) Inhalation of the fumes when burnt (b) External—for local applica- tion	(a) & (b) Piles
161. UṢTRI-PAYAS Gi. 13, 107, 183; 22, 23	Camel's milk	(a) Internal—to be used as ex- clusive diet for one month (b) Internal—in diet	(a) Oedema (b) Constipation, colic debility, etc.
162. VASTA-CARMAN, MŪTRA, NAKHA, PURISA, PITTA Gi. 9, 75	Hide, urine, nails, dung and bile of the she-goat	(a) Inhalation of the fumes when burnt (b) External—prepared for local application	(a) & (b) Insanity
163. VARĀHA-MĀMSA Sū 27, 78; Gi. 2/4, 11; 18, 80	Urine of the he-goat	(a) External—in ointment (b) External—in nasal medication (c) External—in eye-ointment (d) Internal—in medicated ghee	(a) Epilepsy, toxicosis, piles, vagi- nitis, cervicitis (b) Insanity (c) Dimness of vision, infection and discharge of pus (d) Cardiac seizures
164. VARĀHA-MĀMSA Sū 27, 78; Gi. 2/4, 11; 18, 80	Hog's flesh	Internal—in diet	Emaciation, loss of appetite, neu- ralgia, sexual debility
165. VARĀHA-PITTA Gi. 5, 175	Hog's bile	External—for local application	Tumour inside the vaginal passage
166. VARĀHA-ŚONITA Gi. 7, 122; 30, 110	Hog's blood	(a) External—as skin lotion (b) Internal—as ingredient of aci- dulated drink	(a) Cutaneous eruptions (b) Amenorrhoea

TABLE 2: MEDICINAL SUBSTANCES OF ANIMAL ORIGIN

167. VARĀHA-ŚAKRT <i>Ci.</i> 14, 51; 17, 116	Hog's dung	(a) Inhalation of the fumes when burnt (b) Internal—the aqueous extract in linctus	(a) Piles (b) Hiccup, deep-seated phlegm
168. VARĀHA-VRŚANA <i>Si.</i> 12, 18/8	Hog's testes	Ingredient of nutritive enema	Sexual debility
169. VARTAKA-MĀMSA <i>Si.</i> 27, 48; <i>Ci.</i> 4, 41, 250; 5, 110, etc.	Flesh of the button-quail	Internal—in diet	Flatulence, enlarged haemothermia
170. VİŞKIRA-MĀMSA <i>Si.</i> 27, 48; <i>Ci.</i> 6, 19; 8, 161, etc.	Flesh of the gallinaceous birds (Table I)	(a) Ingredient of nutritive enema (b) Internal—in diet	(a) Sexual debility, dysuria (b) Rheumatic conditions, excessive bile secretion, etc.
171. VRKA-CARMAN, MŪTRA, NAKHA, PITTA, ŚAKRT <i>Ci.</i> 9, 75	Hide, urine, nails, dung and bile of the wolf	(a) Inhalation of the fumes when burnt (b) External—prepared for local application	(a) & (b) Insanity
172. VIŞADAMŚA-VASĀ <i>Ci.</i> 14, 48	Fat of the animals of the feline species	(a) Inhalation of the fumes when burnt (b) External—as local application	(a) & (b) Piles
173. VIŞADAMŚA-CARMAN <i>Ci.</i> 14, 49	Hides of animals of the feline species	External—for local application of the fumes when burnt	Piles
174. VRŚA-RASA <i>Si.</i> 12, 18/6	Meat-juice of the bull	Ingredient of nutritive enema	Sexual debility
175. VRŚA-VRŚANA <i>Si.</i> 12, 18/2	Testes of the bull	Ingredient of nutritive enema	Sexual debility
176. VYĀGHRA-MĀMSA <i>Ci.</i> 8, 153	Flesh of the tiger	Internal—in diet	Consumption
177. VYĀGHRA-VASA <i>Ci.</i> 3, 305	Tiger's fat	External—as nasal medication	Recurrent fevers

TABLE 3  
*Medicinal Plants and Plant Products and their Uses*

Name in Caraka; reference, and synonyms if any	Modern and botanical names	Mode of use	Medicinal uses in
1. ADHAKI Sū. 21, 26 etc.	Pigeon pea <i>Cajanus indicus</i> Spreng.	The pods used alone (cooked) or in prescription (internal)	Obesity, abdominal diseases, poisoning, rheumatism, etc.
2. ADITYAVALLI Ci. 26, 268	Sun-flower <i>Helianthus annulus</i> Linn.	The roots used in prescriptions (external)	Affections of the head; grey hairs
3. AGNIMANTHA Sū. 2, 11, etc. Sv.: Anantā, Śriparni, Jayā, Vijayā	<i>Premna integrifolia</i> Linn.	The entire plant used in prescriptions (internal)	Constipation, piles, misperistalsis, urinary complaints, etc.
4. AGURU Sū. 3, 28, etc. Sv.: Alaktaka, Jontaka, Kālāguru, Vāsuka	Aloe-wood tree <i>Aquilaria agallocha</i> Roxb.	The powdered wood used alone or in prescriptions (external and internal)	Fever, toxicosis, dermatosis, leucoderma, rheumatism, hiccup, etc.
5. AJAGANDHĀ Sū. 2, 4, etc. Sv.: Ugragandhā	<i>Peucedanum grande</i> Be.	The seeds used in prescriptions (internal)	Headache, rhinitis, paraplagia, etc.; also as purgative and analgesic
6. AJAKARNA Sū. 3, 5 etc. Sv.: Kālakija, Cīrapatraka	White dammer <i>Vateria indica</i> Linn.	The dried and pulverized plant used in prescriptions (external and internal)	Obstinate skin diseases, fistula, piles, etc.; as a sedative
7. AJAMODĀ Sū. 23, 20, etc. Sv.: Dipyaka, Markājī, Viśalā, Yavānīkā, Ajamodiaka	Indian celery <i>Carium raxburgianum</i> Benth.	The powdered seeds used in prescriptions (internal)	Urinary disorders, indigestion, jaundice, tumours, severe oedema, dysentery, etc.
8. AKHUPARNI Sū. 3, 8, etc. Sv.: Candā, Citrā, Mūsikaparni, Dravanti, Nyāgrodhī, Pratyaksrenī, Musikavaya, Randā, Sambari, Upacitrā	<i>Ipomoea reniformis</i> Clois.	The, powdered and sun-dried roots used in prescriptions (external)	Fistula, piles, ringworms urinary diseases, vaginitis
9. AKṢOTA Ci. 11, 37, etc.	Walnut tree <i>Alaternites maluccana</i> Wild.	The edible nut used in prescriptions (internal)	Anæmia, debility, consumption, senility, etc; as a vitalizer
10. AMALAKI Sū. 4, 11, etc. Sv.: Dhatri, Kāyasthā, Amoghā, Āmalaka	Emblic myrobalan <i>Phyllanthus emblica</i> Linn.	The dried fruit or the fresh juice used in prescriptions (internal)	As tonic in a very large number of diseases
11. AMBAŚTAKI Sū. 4, 9/5, etc. Sv.: Ambasthā, Ambasthā, Pālā, Sreyasi, Veerā, Patī	Velvet-leaf tree <i>Cissampelos pareira</i> Linn.	The root, bark and leaves used in prescriptions (internal)	Assimilation disorders, jaundice, colic pain, etc.
12. AMLIKĀ Sū. 27, 152, etc. Sv.: Sukā	Tamarind tree <i>Tamarindus indicus</i> Linn.	The ripe fruit used in prescriptions (internal)	Diarrhoea, dysentery, oedema, etc.; as appetizer and stimulant

TABLE 3: MEDICINAL PLANTS &amp; PLANT PRODUCTS

13. ĀMRA Sū. 2, 28, etc. Syn.: Sahakāra	Mango tree <i>Mangifera indica</i> Linn.	The fresh fruit used alone with other substances (internal); the powdered stone (external)	Assimilation disorders, etc.; the stone used for restoring normal colour of skin
14. ĀMRATAKA Gi. 22, 35, etc. Syn.: Šringī	Hog-plum tree <i>Spondias mombin</i> Willd.	The fruits as ingredient of sweet jelly	Fainting, neuralgia, painful piles, cardiac disorders, etc.
15. ĀNKOTA Sū. 27, 159, etc. Syn.: Adkola, Nikocaka	Aliangy <i>Alangium lamarkii</i> Thw.	The fruit as ingredient of medicated ghee	Chronic poisoning, epilepsy, etc.
16. ĀPĀMARGA Sū. 2, 3, etc. Syn.: Pratyakpuspi, Saikharika, Mayūraka	Rough chaff tree <i>Achyranthes aspera</i> Linn.	The dried fruits alone or in prescriptions (internal)	Parasitic infection of the head, hemicrania; as ermine
17. ĀRAGVADHĀ Sū. 1, 83, etc. Syn.: Caturāngula, Kriamala, Karṇikāra, Sampāka, Prāgraha, Rājavṛkṣa	Indian laburnum <i>Cassia fistula</i> Linn.	The sap, root, bark and leaves used in prescriptions (internal)	Misperistalsis in infants and in chronic skin affections; as diuretic and purgative
18. ĀRDRAKA Vi. 8, 142, etc. Syn.: Šringaversa, Viśvabheṣaja, Nāgara	Ginger tree <i>Zingiber officinale</i> Rosc.	The dried tubers used as spice or in prescriptions (internal)	Abdominal diseases, indigestion, consumption, etc.
19. ĀRIMEDA Vi. 8, 144, etc.	White babool tree <i>Acacia leucophloea</i> Willd.	The bark or pith used in decoctions (external)	Dental and oral diseases
20. ĀRJAKA Sū. 14, 32, etc. Syn.: Kalāmalaka, Kūṭareka, Sunukhā, Phanijaka	Scrubby basil <i>Ocimum gratissimum</i> Linn.	The pulp or juice of the leaves used in prescriptions (external)	Skin infections, oedema, etc.
21. ĀRJUNA Gi. 8, 129, etc. Syn.: Dhanañjaya, Kakubha	Arjun tree <i>Terminalia arjuna</i> Bedd.	The bark and leaves used in prescriptions (internal)	Diarrhoea, ulcers, cardiac disorders, etc.
22. ĀRKA Gi. 23, 56	Madar tree <i>Calotropis gigantia</i> R. Br.	Milky exudations from the bark used in prescriptions (external)	Poisoning, bites, wounds, etc.; as laxative
23. ĀRUKA Sū. 25, 39, etc. Syn.: Aluka	Peach tree <i>Prunus persica</i> Linn.	The fruits taken alone	Tonic food
24. ĀSANA Sū. 25, 49, etc. Syn.: Bijaka, Priyaka	Terminalia tomentosa Bed.	A decoction of the bark used in prescriptions (internal)	Rheumatism, fever, urinary diseases, etc.
25. ĀŚAMANTAKA Sū. 1, 114, etc. Syn.: Ambuda, Kovidāra	Ebony tree <i>Diospyros malabarica</i>	A decoction of the leaves (internal)	Piles, diseases of the head; as emetic, purgative, etc.
26. ĀŚOKA Sū. 4, 18/2	Asoka tree <i>Saraca indica</i> Linn.	A decoction of the flowering buds and seeds in prescriptions (internal)	Haemothermia, haemorrhage; as sedative, purgative, etc.
27. ĀŚVAGANDHĀ Sū. 3, 8, etc. Syn.: Astāvarohikā, Kāṭṭaka, Kākoli	Winter cherry <i>Withania somnifera</i> Dunal	The leaves and roots used as ingredients of medicinal oil or ghee	Skin diseases, hiccup, consumption, etc.
28. ĀŚVATTHA Sū. 25, 49, etc. Syn.: Bodhvṛtṣa, Sebyra, Gajabahaka, Kāradruma	Sacred fig <i>Ficus religiosa</i> Linn.	The tender roots or the bark, in paste form (internal and external)	Skin infections, wounds etc; as roborant and purgative

TABLE 3  
*Medicinal Plants and Plant Products and their Uses—(Contd.)*

Name in Caraka; reference, and synonyms if any	Modern and botanical names	Mode of use	Medicinal uses in
29. ATASI Ci. 8, 176, etc. Syn.: Haimavati, Urmā, Maṣṇā	Linseed tree: flax <i>Linum usitatissimum</i> Linn.	The decoction of the seeds and leaves used in prescriptions (internal)	Urinary diseases, anaemia, consumption, etc.
30. ATIBALĀ Ci. 3, 267, etc. Syn.: Vātyāyani, Vātyapuspī	Indian sida <i>Sida rhombifolia</i> Linn.	Extract of entire plant used in prescriptions (internal)	Fever, loss of vitality, rheumatic conditions, etc.
31. ATIVIṢA Ci. 3, 204, etc. Syn.: Mahausadha, Prativisa, Šuklakanda, Svetā	Indian aconite <i>Aconitum heterophyllum</i> Wall.	The root and tuber used in prescriptions (internal)	Dysuria, fever, leucoderma, obesity, diarrhoea, etc.
32. ATMAGUPTA Ci. 18, 76, etc. Syn.: Adbhigandha, Ajedā, Kacchurā, Kapitacchu, Lānguli, Raśabhi, Raśaprotkā, Svagupū, Syamaguptā	Cowage plant <i>Mucuna pruriens</i> De.	The decoction of the root and seeds as ingredients of medicated ghee, etc.	Cough, muscular stiffness, facial paralysis, general weakness, etc.
33. AVAKAPUSPI Ci. 7, 114, etc. Syn.: Aticchatrā, Chattrā, Karavī, Šatapuspā	Indian borage <i>Trichodesma indicum</i> R. Br.	Extract of the leaves in oil as ingredient of medicated ghee	Leprosy, dermatosis, piles, etc.
34. BADARI Ci. 14, 214, etc. Syn.: Badara, Kuvala, Sauvira, Phenila	Jujuba fruit tree <i>Ziziphus jujuba</i> Linn.	A sweetened decoction of the leaves used in prescriptions (internal)	Piles, loss of voice, giddiness, etc.
35. BAKULA Vi. 7, 21, etc. Syn.: Kestara, Simhakesara, Sthirā, Kusumā, Viśarada, Dhanvi, Madhupuspā	Bakula tree <i>Mimusops elengi</i> Linn.	Extract of the bark and root with honey, or in medicated ghee	Helminthiasis, fever
36. BALĀ Si. 2, 13, etc. Syn.: Sumagnā, Kharyasthikā, Balini, Jayanti, Bhadrabala, Bhadraudani	Heart-leaf sida <i>Sida cordifolia</i> Linn.	Decoction of the leaves used in prescriptions (internal)	Constipation, splenic disorders; for rejuvenation and for inducing conception
37. BHADRAMUSTA Ci. 24, 145, etc. Syn.: Kuruvilla	Nut-grass <i>Cyperus tuberosus</i> Roth.	Decoction of the roots used in prescriptions (internal)	Cough, spitting of blood, etc.
38. BHALLĀTAKA Si. 3, 5, etc. Syn.: Bhallāta, Bhallātaki, Arusikara	Marking-nut tree <i>Semeocarpus anacardium</i> Linn.	Decoction of the nuts used in prescriptions (internal and external)	Obstinate skin diseases, poisoning; as vitalizer and for rejuvenation
39. BHĀRADVĀJI Si. 4, 8/2, etc. Syn.: Vyāghrata	Devil's cotton tree <i>Abroma augusta</i> Linn.	Infusion of the leaves and roots used in prescriptions (internal and external)	Debility, female diseases, amenorrhoea, etc.

TABLE 3: MEDICINAL PLANTS &amp; PLANT PRODUCTS

40. BHĀRGI Ci. 3, 211, etc. <i>Syn.</i> : Angaravalli, Phatiji, Brahmayasthi, Bharangi	<i>Clerodendron serratum</i>	The roots used alone, or as ingredient of medicinal oil	Cough, fevers, hard eruptions, etc.
41. BHĀVYA Ci. 24, 136, etc. <i>Syn.</i> : Bhava	Indian <i>dillenia</i> <i>Dillenia indica</i> Linn.	Extract of fruit as ingredient of medicinal ghee	Urinary calculus, retention of urine, paralysis, etc.
42. BHĀNGARĀJA Ci. 18, 117, etc. <i>Syn.</i> : Bhṛṅga, Bhṛṅgāra, Bhṛṅgāra	Trailing <i>eclipta</i> <i>Wedelia calendulacea</i> Less.	The plant-juice taken with honey	Cough, grey hairs and senility
43. BHŪRJA Sū. 3, 4, etc. <i>Syn.</i> : Bhūrjapatra, Citravak, Bhujia, Carmi	Bhojapatra tree <i>Betula bhojpatra</i> Wall.	The nodes and bark compounded into ointment	Ringworm, acute spreading suppurations, ulcers
*44. VIBHITAKA Sū. 4, 13, etc. <i>Syn.</i> : Akṣa, Vibhītaki, Tusa, Vibhīta, Kāmaghna	Beleric myrobalan <i>Terminalia belerica</i> Retz.	The dried fruits used alone or in prescriptions (internal)	Cough, heart-disease, etc; as purgative and blood-cleanser
45. BIJĀPŪRAKA Ci. 5, 166, etc. <i>Syn.</i> : Bijapura, Mātulaṅga, Kēśarāmla	Adam's apple tree <i>Citrus medica</i> Linn.	The fruit taken alone or in prescriptions (internal)	Colic pain, alcoholism; as appetizer
46. BILVA Sū. 2, 19, etc. <i>Syn.</i> : Śrīphala, Śailapatra, Tripatra, Mahāphala Mahākāpitha	Bengal quince, <i>Aegle marmelos</i> Corr.	The fruit used alone or in prescriptions (internal)	Diarrhoea, constipation; in rejuvenation
47. BIMBI Sū. 1, 78, etc. <i>Syn.</i> : Tundi, Piluparnī, Oṣṭhi, Bimba, Bimbaka, Rakaphala, Tilkatunḍi	Kunch tree <i>Cephalaria indica</i> Naud.	The dried root or juice used in prescriptions (internal and external)	Hard tumours, piles; as purgative
48. BRAHMĪ Sū. 8, 56, etc. <i>Syn.</i> : Vayasthā, Surasā, Somavallari, Subarcā	Indian pennywort <i>Herpestis monnierii</i> H. B. & K.	The dried and powdered plant used in prescriptions (internal)	Senile decay, loss of memory; as preventive of abortion
49. BRĀHATI Ci. 19, 26, etc. <i>Syn.</i> : Mahati, Hinguli Prasatha, Brhatī, Vartaki, Kāntū.	Indian nightshade <i>Solanum indicum</i> Linn.	The leaves and roots used in prescriptions (internal and external)	Diarrhoea, toxicosis, pain and oedema of the vagina
50. CANDANA Ci. 1/1, 148, etc. <i>Syn.</i> : Malayaśa, Gandhasara, Sitahima	Sandal wood tree <i>Santalum album</i> Linn.	The powdered wood or paste in prescriptions (internal and external)	Diarrhoea, vomiting, chronic skin diseases, etc.
51. CARATI Ci. 9, 45, etc.	<i>Ionidium suffruticosum</i> De.	The plant used as ingredient of medicinal ghee	Insanity, epilepsy; for proper growth in childhood
52. CAVIKA Ci. 18, 158, etc. <i>Syn.</i> : Cavyā, Cavi, Nakuli, Cavyaka	<i>Piper chaba</i> Hunter	Decoction of the roots and dried fruits used for medicinal ghee	Consumptive cough, indigestion, change of voice, emaciation, etc.
53. CHILLI Sū. 27, 98	Wild spinach <i>Chenopodium album</i> Linn.	Cooked as a pot-herb	As aid to elimination
54. CIRABILVA Ci. 3, 267, etc. <i>Syn.</i> : Nakamāla, Putiparpa	Indian beech. <i>Pongamia glabra</i> Vent.	Decoction of the sprouts used in prescriptions (internal)	Fever, disorders of the spleen

TABLE 3  
Medicinal Plants and Plant Products and their Uses—(Contd.)

Name in Caraka; reference, and synonyms if any	Modern and botanical names	Mode of use	Medicinal uses in
55. CIRMATA Gi. 19, 32, etc. Syn.: Kṣetracitrīta, Pāṇḍuphala, Pāṭhyā	<i>Cucumis melo</i> Linn.	The seeds used in decoction. The fruit taken alone or as ingredient of sweet drink	Dysentery; as laxative
56. CITRAKA Sū. 2, 28, etc. Syn.: Pāṭhi, Dāruṇa, Raktacitraka, Uṣāṇa	White lead wort <i>Plumbago zeylonica</i> Linn.	Decoction of the roots and leaves used in prescriptions for internal use	Urinary diseases, anaemia, etc.; as laxative and digestive
57. CORAKA Sū. 3, 24, etc. Syn.: Parṇacoraka, Phalacoraka, Kṣemata	Indian angelica tree <i>Angelica glauca</i> Edgew.	The roots and stalks used in Headache, epilepsy, hiccup, etc.	
58. GUKRĀ Gi. 8, 131	Wood sorrel tree <i>Rumex vesicarius</i> Linn.	The extracted juice as ingredient of vegetable soup	Anorexia
59. CUNCUPARNIKA Sū. 27, 100	Coxcomb plant. <i>Cicerotus olitorius</i> Linn.	Cooked as a pot-herb	As aid in elimination
60. DADIMA Sū. 2, 20, etc. Syn.: Daqimba, Rakrapupa, Karaka	Pomegranate tree <i>Punica granatum</i> Linn.	The fruit-juice taken alone or in prescriptions	Diarrhoea, cough, oedema, etc.; as digestive and anti-emetic
61. DANTASATHA Gi. 3, 267, etc. Syn.: Rocanaka, Jambhaka	Lemon tree <i>Citrus medica</i> Linn. (Variety: <i>C. limonum</i> or <i>acida</i> )	The fruit-juice taken alone or with drinks	Fever; as digestive
62. DANTIN Sū. 2, 9, etc. Syn.: Udumbaraparnī, Nikumbha, Makulaka, Citrā	Wild croton <i>Baileya montana</i> Muell & Arg.	The sun-dried roots used in prescriptions for internal use	Oedema, jaundice, stomach complaints
63. DARBHA Sū. 4, 12, etc. Syn.: Kuṭa, Kṣurapatra, Yagnika	Large variety of sacrificial grass <i>Eragrostis cynosuroides</i> Beauv.	The extract of the grass used in prescriptions for internal use	Senility, wasting diseases, etc; for increasing lactation
64. DARUHARIDRA Sū. 4, 11, etc. Syn.: Pitāḍu, Pitāḍaru, Hemakanta	Indian barberry <i>Berberis asiatica</i> Roxb.	The extract of the plant used in prescriptions for internal use	Hæmorrhage, piles, prurius, alopecia, etc.
65. DEVADARU Gi. 16, 48, etc. Syn.: Śatapatraka, Suradruma, Devadruma	Deodar tree <i>Cedrus lond.</i> (Varieties: <i>C. libani</i> Barr & <i>C. deodara</i> )	The dried leaves and the extract of the wood and roots used in prescriptions for internal use	Headache, intestinal worms, urinary diseases, menorrhagia, fistula, etc.

H.K. & F.

TABLE 3: MEDICINAL PLANTS &amp; PLANT PRODUCTS

57

66. DHĀMARGAVA <i>Ka.</i> 4, 1, etc. <i>Syn.</i> : Karhotaki, Kothaphala, Mahājālinī, Rajakostāti	Sponge-gourd <i>Luffa aegyptica</i> Mill.	The fruits, flowers and tender leaves used in decoctions for internal use
67. DHANVAN <i>Gi.</i> 3, 258, etc. <i>Syn.</i> : Dhanurvṛksa	Indian linden tree <i>Grewia tiliaefolia</i> Vahl.	The powdered bark used internally in decoctions and externally in ointments
68. DHĀNYAKA <i>Gi.</i> 3, 182, etc. <i>Syn.</i> : Tumburaka, Dhanya, Dhāni, Dhanika, Bijadhānya, Kustumbura	Coriander plant <i>Coriandrum sativum</i> Linn.	The entire plant used in prescriptions for internal use
69. DHĀTAKI <i>Sū.</i> 4, 15, etc. <i>Syn.</i> : Bahupuspikā, Dhātṛi, Kunuda, Kuñjara, Tāmrapsipi, Pārvati	Fulsee flower tree <i>Wodfordia floribunda</i> Salisb.	The flowers as ingredient of sweetened decoctions for internal use
70. DHĀVA <i>Sū.</i> 3, 3, etc. <i>Syn.</i> : Madhuravalka, Madhuratvak, Vakaviksa	Crane tree <i>Anogeissus latifolia</i> Wall.	The resin as ingredient of medicinal oil for external application
71. DRAKSĀ <i>Gi.</i> 5, 123, etc. <i>Syn.</i> : Rasa, Rasāā, Madhurasā, Kāśmiritā	Grape vine <i>Vitis vinifera</i> Linn.	The shoots used in prescriptions; the fruits used alone or in drinks
72. DUGDHIKĀ <i>Gi.</i> 8, 131, etc. <i>Syn.</i> : Kṣirinī, Kṣiri, Svāduparnī, Dugdhi	<i>Oxystelma esculentum</i> R. Br.	Ingredient of vegetable soup
73. DUHSPARŚA <i>Gi.</i> 24, 166	Khorasan thorn <i>Ahogeī majorum</i> Desu.	Infusion in boiling water used in prescriptions (internal)
74. DŪRVĀ <i>Gi.</i> 3, 258, etc. <i>Syn.</i> : Bhārgavi, Sataparvā, Tikta-parvā, Sataviryā, Latā, Śitā	Couch grass <i>Cynodon dactylon</i> Pers.	The grass leaves as ingredient of medicinal oil
75. ELA <i>Sū.</i> 2, 4, etc. <i>Syn.</i> : Bharngaparṇikā, Tuttha, Kṣudra, Sūkṣmāla	Lesser cardamom plant <i>Elettaria cardamomum</i>	The spice used alone or in prescriptions (internal)
76. ELAPARNI <i>Gi.</i> 8, 131	Kulanjan plant <i>Alpinia galanga</i> Swartz	Ingredient of vegetable soup
77. ELVALUKA <i>Gi.</i> 14, 159	Cherry tree <i>Prunus cerasus</i> Linn.	The fruits and roots used in sweetened decoctions (internal)
78. ERAKĀ <i>Sū.</i> 3, 24, etc. <i>Syn.</i> : Gundrā, Simbigundrā, Śringaverabha-mulaka	Elephant grass <i>Typha elephantina</i> Roxb.	The decoction of the roots used in prescriptions (internal)
79. ERANDA <i>Sū.</i> 2, 12, etc. <i>Syn.</i> : Citrabija, Triputi, Tribija, Cancū, Maṇḍa, Uruvata	Castor oil plant <i>Ricinus communis</i> Linn.	The expressed oil used alone or in prescriptions (internal)

TABLE 3  
*Medicinal Plants and Plant Products and their Uses—(Contd.)*

Name in Caraka; reference, and synonyms if any	Modern and botanical names	Mode of use	Medicinal uses in
80. ERVĀKA Gī. 26, 52, etc. Syn.: Lomasa, Toyaphala, Lomaśakāṇḍa, Vṛhatphala	Melon cucumber plant <i>Cucumis utilisimus</i> Linn.	The seeds used in prescriptions (internal)	Urinary calculus, dysuria, diseases of the bladder
81. GAJAPIPPALI Gī. 12, 41, etc. Syn.: Karipippali, Kunjarapippali, Kapi-vallikā, Hastidanti	Elephant pepper plant <i>Sindapodus officinalis</i> Schott	The powdered dried fruit used in prescriptions (internal)	Files, oedema, anaemia
82. GAYEDHUKA Sū. 2, 25, etc. Syn.: Gavedhu, Kaudra	Job's tears <i>Coix lacryma-jobi</i> Linn.	The seeds used alone or in infusion; or cooked as cereal	Eunaciation and debility
83. HAMSAPĀDI Gī. 23, 220, etc. Syn.: Godhaśādi, Hamsavati, Hamsapādīla, Vikrantā	Maidenhair <i>Adiantum capillus-veneris</i> Linn.	The seeds used in prescriptions (external)	Suppurations due to poisonous bites; rheumatic conditions
84. HAPUSA Sū. 23, 20, etc. Syn.: Habusa, Vipusa, Vigandhika	Juniper tree <i>Juniperus communis</i> Linn.	The seeds in decoction or as ingredient of medicinal ghee (internal)	Female diseases, dysuria, throat-spasms, etc.
85. HARIDRĀ Sū. 4, 11, etc. Syn.: Priyaka, Haridruma	Turmeric plant <i>Curcuma longa</i> Roxb.	The dried tubers used in prescriptions (external and internal)	Dermatoses, toxicosis, impaired vision, etc.
86. HARITAKI Sū. 13, 92, etc. Syn.: Amṛta, Śivā, Dibyā, Prāṇadā, Vanatikā, Cetaki, Jivanilā, Abhayā	Chebulic myrobalan <i>Terminalia chebula</i> Rtz.	The dried fruits and seeds taken alone or in prescriptions (internal)	Dermatoses, oedema, urinary diseases; as general tonic, blood purifier and purgative
87. HINGU Sū. 2, 29, etc. Syn.: Hinguka	Asafoetida plant <i>Fructus tauricus</i> Linn. (Varieties: <i>F. foetida</i> Regil, <i>F. narther</i> Boiss.)	The dried fruits as ingredient of gruel	Cough, dysuria, dermatosis, etc.; as laxative, digestive, and rejuvenant
88. HINGUPARNI Gī. 9, 57, etc.	Emetic nut <i>Randia dumetorum</i> Lank.	A decoction of the nuts used in prescriptions (external and internal)	Inguinal swellings, spleen diseases, helminthiasis, etc.
89. IKSU Sū. 4, 10, etc.	Sugarcane <i>Saccharum officinarum</i> Linn.	The juice used as drink or as ingredient of mixed drink; the roots used in prescriptions	Loss of voice, vomiting, morbid thirst; for longevity; as a roborant
90. IKSURAKA Gī. 4, 78, etc. Syn.: Kṣuraka, Triksura, Vajra, Kokilaśa	Long-leaved barberry <i>Asteranthus longifolia</i> Nees	A decoction of the leaves and roots used alone or in prescriptions (internal)	Urinary calculus, haemothermia; as an aid to virility

TABLE 3: MEDICINAL PLANTS &amp; PLANT PRODUCTS

91. INDRĀVARUNI <i>Ci.</i> 14, 138	Bitter cucumber plant <i>Citrullus colocynthis</i> Schrad.	Decoction of the fruits used in Piles prescriptions (internal)
92. INGUDI <i>Ci.</i> 1/3, 15, etc. <i>Syn.</i> : Bhallakiṛṭṣa, Tiktaka, Visagandhaka, Tailaphala	Zachnum oil plant <i>Balanites roxburghii</i> Planch.	The alkali from the plant-ash used in prescriptions Dermatosis, urinary diseases; for rejuvenation
93. ITKATA <i>Sū.</i> 4, 12/17, etc.	Prickly sesban <i>Sesbania aculeata</i> Pers.	Decoction of the grass roots as ingredients of prescriptions and ointment (internal and external) Fever; for increasing lactation
94. JALAPIPPALI <i>Sū.</i> 27, 171	Poison buttercup <i>Ranunculus sceleratus</i> Linn.	The entire plant made into paste for local application Ulcers
95. JAMBU <i>Sū.</i> 2, 28, etc. <i>Syn.</i> : Jambula, Mahājambu, Rājajambu, Kākajambu	Jambol tree <i>Eugenia fruiticosa</i> Roxb. or <i>Eugenia jambolana</i> Linn.	Seeds, leaves and the stones of the fruits used in decoctions, the bark used in prescriptions (internal) Diarrhoea, consumption, nausea; as astringent
96. JĀTIPHĀLA <i>Ci.</i> 3, 207, etc.	Nutmeg trees <i>Myristica fragrans</i> Houtt.	The fruits used in preparing medicinal oil (external) Hard cutaneous eruptions, pruritus, poisoning, etc.
97. JAYĀ, <i>Ci.</i> 9, 45 <i>Syn.</i> : Jayanti	Sesban tree <i>Sesbania aegyptica</i> Pers.	A decoction of the entire plant used in prescriptions (internal) Insanity, strokes, epilepsy
98. JIMŪTA <i>Sū.</i> 1, 81, etc. <i>Syn.</i> : Jimūtaka, Garagari, Venī, Devatādata	Bristly luffa <i>Luffa echinata</i> Roxb.	The flowers and fresh fruits used in prescriptions; the powder of the dried fruit taken alone For emesis and enema in fever, consumption, anaemia, etc.
99. JINGINI <i>Ci.</i> 30, 83, etc.	Indian ash tree <i>Orthia woodii</i> Roxb.	Decoction of the leaves as ingredient of astringent douche Morbid discharges from vagina
100. JIRAKA <i>Ci.</i> 2/1, 43, etc. <i>Syn.</i> : Jirā, Ajaji	Cumin plant <i>Cuminum cyminum</i> Linn.	The seeds used in prescriptions (internal) General tonic for all ailments; as an aid to virility
101. JIVANTI <i>Sū.</i> 3, 25, etc. <i>Syn.</i> : Hemavati, Jivaniya, Jivapuṣpa	Cork swallow-wort <i>Dendrobium macreii</i> Linn.	The fruits taken alone or as ingredient of unguent or decoction Snake-bite, chest-congestion, cough; for rejuvenation and longevity
102. JŪRNĀJHYĀ <i>Sū.</i> 21, 25, etc.	Sorghum <i>Sorghum vulgare</i> Pers.	Cooked as cereal food Obesity; as cooling and astringent
103. JYOTISMATI <i>Sū.</i> 1, 38, etc. <i>Syn.</i> : Durmada, Jyotirlatā, Parāvatapadi	<i>Cardiospermum halicacabum</i> Linn.	A decoction of the roots or seeds used in prescriptions (internal) Headache, rhinitis, fainting; as purgative
104. KADALI <i>Ci.</i> 3, 268, etc. <i>Syn.</i> : Rambhā, Sakṛphala	Banana tree <i>Musa sapientum</i> Linn.	The fermented fruit or the alkaline extract of the ashes used in prescriptions; the pith, bulb and roots also used (internal) Dermatosis, leucoderma, piles, urinary diseases, abdominal diseases, blood-vomiting
105. KADAMBA <i>Ci.</i> 18, 154 <i>Syn.</i> : Nipa, Sidhupuṣpa, Bhṛigavallabha, Bhūmiladamba	Kadamba or wild cinchona plant <i>Anthocephalus cadamba</i> Mig.	The resin or an extract of the bark used in prescriptions (internal) Urinary anomalies, rheumatism; as sedative

TABLE 3  
Medicinal Plants and Plant Products and their Uses—(Contd.)

Name in Caraka; reference, and synonyms if any	Modern and botanical names	Mode of use	Medical uses in
106. KADARA Sū. 25, 49, etc. Syn.: Varvara	Gum arabic tree <i>Acacia arabica</i> Willd.	The gum or milky exudate or a decoction of the leaves used in prescriptions (internal)	Urticaria, fever, etc.
107. KAKADUMBARIKA Gi. 7, 170	Redwood fig tree <i>Ficus hispida</i> Linn.	A paste of the fruits used in prescriptions (external)	Leucoderma
108. KAKAMACI Sū. 27, 89, etc. Syn.: Kākamācikā, Kākhāyā, Kākamātā	Black nightshade <i>Solanum nigrum</i> Linn.	The entire plant cooked and used as vegetable	Skin lesions, oedema, etc.; as aphrodisiac
109. KAKANASA Gi. 18, 40, etc. Syn.: Kākatupadaphala, Vāyasi	Indian perry <i>Hygrophilia augustifolia</i> R. Br.	A paste of the leaves used in ointments or in medicated ghee (internal)	Hard nodules on the skin jaundice, cough, consumption, etc.
110. KAKANDOLA Sū. 27, 34	Sword bean <i>Canavalia ensiformis</i> De.	The lentils used as food	As an aid to elimination, as an aphrodisiac and an aid to virility
111. KAKKOLA Gi. 26, 210, etc. Syn.: Takkola, Sthūlamarica, Koraka, Kānikolaka	Cubeb plant <i>Piper cubeba</i> Linn.	A paste of the fruits as ingredient of medicinal oil or mouth wash	Oral and dental diseases, fevers, loss of voice, etc.
112. KALAMBA Sū. 27, 100	Wild pot-herb <i>Ipomoea reptans</i> Poir.	Cooked as a pot-herb	As a digestive, a cooling agent, and an aid to elimination
113. KĀLANUSARIKA Gi. 26, 243	<i>Ichnocarpus frutescens</i> R. Br.	An extract of the leaves as ointment (external)	All eye-diseases; as a promotor of eyesight
114. KĀLAŠĀKA Sū. 27, 91, etc. Syn.: Kālaka	Jute plant <i>Corchorus capsularis</i> Linn.	The cooked leaves (internal)	Poisoning, oedema, intestinal stasis, etc.
115. KĀLAYA Gi. 20, 37, etc.	Chickling-vetch lentil <i>Lathyrus sativus</i> Linn.	A decoction of the leaves (internal); the paste of the lentil for local application	Vomiting, nausea, suppurated wounds
116. KĀLEYAKA Sū. 3, 26	Yellow sandal tree <i>Santalum floriferum</i> Linn.	A paste of the finely divided wood as ointment (external)	As a cooling agent
117. KĀMALA Sū. 3, 24, etc. Syn.: Padma, Pankaja, Nalika, Ambuja, Kokanada, Pundarika	East Indian lotus plant <i>Nelumbo speciosum</i> Willd.	The paste of the petals as ingredient of an unguent; cold aqueous extract used as drink	Nasal haemorrhage, dysuria

TABLE 3: MEDICINAL PLANTS &amp; PLANT PRODUCTS

118. KAMPILLAKA <i>Sī. 1</i> , 83 <i>Syn.</i> : Kāntakārītā, Vyāghri	The "karnala" dye plant <i>Mallotus philippinus</i> Muell.	Extract as ingredient of medicinal oil and in internal prescriptions	Chronic skin diseases, oedema; as purgative
119. KANAKAPUŚPI <i>Ci. 7</i> , 167 <i>Syn.</i> : Kāntakārītā, Vyāghri	Golden thistle or yellow thistle <i>Euphorbia thomsoniana</i> Boiss.	The petals as ingredient of ointment	Leucoderma
120. KANTAKĀRI <i>Sī. 2</i> , 22, etc. <i>Syn.</i> : Kāntakārītā, Vyāghri	Wild egg-plant <i>Solanum aethiopicum</i> Schr. & Wendl.	Extract of the entire plant and fruits in prescriptions (internal)	Dysuria, misperistalsis, etc.; for rejuvenation
121. KAPITANA <i>Ci. 15</i> , 126 <i>Syn.</i> : Dantaphala, Gandhapala	Flowering peepul tree <i>Thespesia populnea</i> Solard.	Extract of the root and bark used in medicated ghee	Bleeding piles, pain in the rectal region, etc.
122. KAPITTHA <i>Ci. 6</i> , 35, etc. <i>Syn.</i> : Jātipuspa, Karamardata	Wood-apple tree <i>Feronia elephantum</i> Corr.	Powdered leaves made into linctus with honey; the fruits used alone or in prescriptions (internal)	Urinary disorders, chronic skin diseases, toxicosis, etc.
123. KARAMARDA <i>Vī. 8</i> , 140, etc. <i>Syn.</i> : Jātipuspa, Karamardata	Bengal currant <i>Carissa carandas</i> Linn.	A decoction of the fruits used in prescriptions (internal)	Disorders of the first humor
124. KARANĀJA <i>Sī. 3</i> , 3, etc. <i>Syn.</i> : Tiliṣpakaṇṭaka	Indian beech tree <i>Pongamia glabra</i> Vent.	The leaves soaked in ox-bile and made into ointment; dried powder in prescriptions (internal)	Dermatosis, pain in stomach and spleen, ear-ache, etc.
125. KĀRAVELLIKA <i>Vī. 8</i> , 143 <i>Syn.</i> : Tiliṣpakaṇṭaka	Bitter-gourd plant <i>Momordica charantia</i> Linn.	The decoction of the fruits and leaves as ingredient of enema or in prescriptions (internal)	Cough, haemothernia, etc.
126. KARAVĪRA <i>Sī. 3</i> , 15, etc. <i>Syn.</i> : Virā, Viraka, Dibyapuṣpa	Roseberry spurge plant <i>Nerium odoratum</i> Soland.	A decoction of the root-bark in water in prescriptions (internal)	Skin diseases, toxicosis, wounds, etc.
127. KARCURA <i>Sī. 27</i> , 155 <i>Syn.</i> : Tiliṣpakaṇṭaka	Zedoary tree or Sati plant <i>Garcinia zedoaria</i> Rosc.	The fruit without the rind taken alone	Cough, hiccup, piles, etc; as appetizer
128. KARIKA <i>Ci. 30</i> , 92, etc. <i>Syn.</i> : Tiliṣpakaṇṭaka	Caper plant <i>Capparis aphylla</i> Roth.	The decoction of the leaves as ingredient of vaginal douche, or rectal enema	Morbid discharges from the vagina; retention of urine, stool and flatus
129. KARKANDHŪ <i>Sī. 4</i> , 13, etc. <i>Syn.</i> : Karkandhuka	Wild jujuba plant <i>Ziziphus excelsa</i> Mill.	A decoction of the plant used in prescriptions or in warm enema (internal and external)	As purgative
130. KARKATASRNĀGI <i>Ci. 17</i> , 101, etc. <i>Syn.</i> : Karkatākhyā, Kuirasringāya	<i>Rhus succedanea</i> Linn.	The powdered nut in prescriptions (internal)	Cough, hiccup, nausea
131. KARKATAKI <i>Sī. 27</i> , 100 <i>Syn.</i> : Karkatākhyā, Kuirasringāya	<i>Momordica cochinchinensis</i> Spreng.	The cooked fruit used as an article of food	As an aid to elimination

TABLE 3  
*Medicinal Plants and Plant Products and their Uses—(Contd.)*

Name in Caraka; reference, and synonyms if any	Modern and botanical names	Mode of use	Medicinal uses in
132. KARKOTAKA Gi. 3, 189	<i>Monardica diocia</i> Roxb.	Leaves and fruits cooked as vegetables	Fever; as an astringent
133. KARPASA Gi. 26, 69, etc. Syn.: Kārpāśi, Picū	Levantine cotton tree <i>Gossypium herbaceum</i> Linn.	A decoction of the root-bark used in prescriptions (internal and external)	Dysuria, scabies, and scrofula
134. KARPŪRA Gi. 28, 153	<i>Limoniphila gratisina</i> Blume	The entire plant compounded into medicinal oil (internal)	Consumption, sallow complexion; as vitalizer
135. KARVUDARA Sū. 27, 99, etc. Syn.: Kovidāra, Śvetakāñcana, Vanarāja	White mountain ebony <i>Bauhinia racemosa</i> Lamk.	As an article of food	Hemothermia, haemorrhage; as an aid to elimination
136. KĀŚA Sū. 4, 12, etc. Syn.: Śāradā, Kāśi, Camarapuspikā	Thatch grass <i>Saccharum spontaneum</i> Linn.	A decoction of the grass (internal)	Senility, fever; as promoter of lactation
137. KĀSAMARDA Gi. 16, 117, etc. Syn.: Kāśāri, Kāśamardata	Senna sophera plant <i>Cassia sophera</i> Linn. or <i>Senna purpurea</i> Roxb.	The entire plant as an ingredient of medicated ghee	Cough, female diseases, etc.
138. KĀSMARI Gi. 26, 167 Syn.: Kāśmarya, Kāśmirī, Mahābhadrā, Bhadrā	White teak <i>Gmelina arborea</i> Linn.	A paste of the leaves as ingredient of medicated ghee	Stiffness of the back, facial paralysis, hoarseness, etc.
139. KASERUKA Sū. 3, 21, etc. Syn.: Kaseru	Tiger-nut or rush-nut tree <i>Stipus grossus</i> Linn. or <i>S. fysae</i> Clarke	A paste of the tubers (external and internal)	Rheumatism, haemotherapy, wasting diseases, etc.
140. KATAKA Gi. 26, 251, etc. Syn.: Ambuprasādana, Toyaprasādaphala	Clearing-nut tree <i>Styrax polystachyus</i> Linn.	A paste of the seeds used in ointment	Eye-diseases, failing eyesight, discharges from eyes, etc.
141. KATABHI Gi. 9, 70, etc. Syn.: Pājali, Kudratyāmā	White siris <i>Albizia procera</i> Benth.	The powdered bark made into a paste with goat's urine along with other ingredients (internal)	Intestinal worms, toxicosis, edema, urinary disorders, etc.
142. KATPHALĀ Sū. 28, 152	Bay-berry tree <i>Nyssa nagi</i> Thunb.	The bark used in sweetened decoctions (internal)	Bronchial asthma, cough, diarrhoea, etc.
143. KATTAPHALA Gi. 28, 152	Musk mallow <i>Hibiscus abelmoschus</i> Linn.	A decoction of the seeds used in prescriptions (internal)	Vomiting, spleen disorders, pectoral lesions, etc.

TABLE 3: MEDICINAL PLANTS &amp; PLANT PRODUCTS

144. KATTAROHINI <i>Śū. 23</i> , 19, etc. <i>Syn.: Śataparvā, Kapūla, Sakulādani, Arija, Asokarohinya</i>	Hellebore plant <i>Picromiza kurroa</i> Royle	A decoction of the roots and tubers in prescriptions (internal)	Dermatitis, jaundice, piles; as a purifying agent for breast-milk
145. KATVĀNGA <i>Śū. 25</i> , 40, etc.	Indian calotanthes tree <i>Aidianthus excelsa</i> Roxb.	A decoction of the leaves in prescriptions (internal)	Menstrual disorders, pectoral lesions, diarrhoea, etc.
146. KEŚARA <i>Ci. 2/1</i> , 32, etc. <i>Syn.: Nāgakēśara, Ketari, Turīgi</i>	Fragrantpoon <i>Ochracearpus longifolius</i> Hook & Benth.	The powdered, dried buds used in prescriptions (internal)	Irregular, fever, jaundice, etc.
147. KHADIRA <i>Ci. 4</i> , 70, etc. <i>Syn.: Somavalka</i>	Catechu tree <i>Acacia catechu</i> Willd.	The flowers or the fermented wine from the resinous exudate used in prescriptions (internal)	Haemothermia, urinary disorders, blood poisoning
148. KHARJURA <i>Śū. 23</i> , 38, etc.	Date palm <i>Phoenix sylvestris</i> Roxb.	The dried fruits as food or in fermented liquors	Alcoholism, wasting diseases, trauma, erysipelas, etc.
149. KIRĀTĀTIKTA <i>Śū. 4</i> , 12, etc. <i>Syn.: Kirātātikta, Kaṭutikta, T̄manimba</i>	Chiretta plant <i>Sauria chirata</i> Ham.	The entire plant used in paste or decoction (internal)	Fever; for purification of blood and breast-milk
150. KODRAVA <i>Śū. 21</i> , 25, etc.	Common millet <i>Paspalum scrobiculatum</i> Linn.	Used as cereal food	Piles, cough, obesity, etc.
151. KAIDARYA <i>Śū. 4</i> , 10, etc. <i>Syn.: Kaiaryā</i>	Curry-neem plant <i>Murraya koenigii</i> Spreng.	The leaves and barks used in decoctions (internal)	Intestinal worms, dysuria, hoarseness
152. KOṢAMRA <i>Ci. 30</i> , 82	Gum lac tree <i>Schleichera trijuga</i> Willd.	The expressed oil used as ingredient of medicated applications (external)	All morbid discharges from the vagina
153. KRAMUKA <i>Śū. 25</i> , 49, etc. <i>Syn.: Jirṇapatra</i>	Betel-nut <i>Areca catechu</i> Linn.	A paste of the nut with sandal wood, or in decoction with other drugs (internal)	Bronchial asthma, anaemia, skin diseases
154. KRŚNAŚAIREYAKA <i>Ci. 26</i> , 268	Purple nail-dye plant <i>Baileya strigosa</i> Willd.	A decoction of the plant, used in prescriptions (external)	All eye-affections, skin discolorations, etc.
155. KRŚNAŚĀNA <i>Ci. 26</i> , 269	Flax-hemp plant <i>Grovularia vernosa</i> Linn.	The juice of the plant, used in prescriptions (external)	As above
156. KRTAVEDDHANA <i>Śū. 1</i> , 83, etc. <i>Syn.: Keṣātaki, Mṛdatigphala</i>	Bitter luffa plant <i>Luffa acutangula</i> Roxb.	The fruits and seeds used in prescriptions (internal); the flowers fermented as wine	As purgative and emetic; as tonic
157. KŚAVAKA <i>Vi. 7</i> , 17, etc. <i>Syn.: Kṣava, Ugra</i>	Sneeze-wort <i>Centipeda orbicularia</i> Lour.	Extract of the seeds and leaves, used in prescriptions (internal) and external	Helminthiasis, fever, dermatosis, etc.

## CARAKA SAMHITĀ

TABLE 3  
*Medicinal Plants and Plant Products and their Uses—(Contd.)*

Name in Caraka; reference, and synonyms if any	Modern and botanical names	Mode of use	Medicinal uses in
158. KṢIRAVALLI Vi. 8, 139 Syn.: Kṣiralata	Milky yam <i>Ipomoea digitata</i> Linn.	As above	As above
159. KṢIRAVIDĀRI Vi. 8, 139 Syn.: Kṣiravida	Ring coronet tree <i>Holostemma rheedii</i> Wall.	A decoction of the leaves in milk, used as ingredient of medicinal ghee	Disorders of the second humor
160. KULLATTHA Si. 2, 12, etc. Syn.: Kulitha, Kulathika	Horse-gram <i>Dolichos biflorus</i> Linn.	The cooked pulse used as food or as paste in prescriptions (internal)	Misperistalsis, fever, emaciation, cough, etc.
161. KUMĀRAJIVĀ Si. 27, 100	<i>Putranjīvā roxburghii</i> Wall.	The leaves used as vegetable	As an aid to elimination
162. KUMMI Vi. 8, 144	Saffron mango tree <i>Careya arborea</i> Roxb.	A decoction of the leaves, used in prescriptions (internal)	Disorders of the third humor; as astringent and purgative
163. KUMUDA Si. 27, 117, etc. Syn.: Aravinda, Svetajalaja	White water-lily <i>Nymphaea alba</i> Linn.	The seeds and flowers taken raw	Urinary diseases, alcoholism; as intestinal astringent
164. KUNKUMACI. 23, 55, etc. Syn.: Rudhira, Vadraka, Kāśmira, Agnīshikha	Saffron plant <i>Crocus sativa</i> Linn.	The powdered tendrils as ingredient of pills	Cataract, dimness of vision, night-blindness
165. KUŞMĀNDĀ Si. 27, 102	White gourd plant <i>Bennemusa ceyfera</i> Savi.	Cooked as food; the plant used as vegetable	As a digestive and as an aid to elimination
166. KUŞTHA Si. 3, 4, etc. Syn.: Kuthira, Puskara, Kāśmiraja	Indian costus or Orris root <i>Saussuria latifolia</i> Clark or <i>Iris florentina</i> Linn.	The roots soaked in ox-bile for external application; decoction or powder in prescriptions (internal)	Anæmia, chronic skin diseases, toxicosis, colic pain, cardiac disorders, etc.
167. KUSTUMBĀKA Vi. 7, 17, etc. Syn.: Dhanya, Dhānyaka, Tumburuka	Coriander plant <i>Coriandrum sativum</i> Linn.	Used in prescriptions and in enemas (internal and external)	Piles, dermatosis, intestinal worms
168. KUSUMBHA Si. 13, 10, etc. Syn.: Layā	Safflower plant <i>Carthamus tinctorius</i> Linn.	The seeds or oil used as food or cooking medium; also for local application	Phlegm, urinary gravel, dysuria, insect-bites
169. KUTAJA Si. 1, 83, etc. Syn.: Kurci, Vasaka, Girimallikā, Kupajatava, Sakra	Kurchi plant <i>Holarhena antidysenterica</i> Wall.	The bark and seeds used in prescriptions (internal and external)	Skin diseases, haemorrhage, fever, assimilation disorders; as purgative and emetic
170. KUTUMBĀKA Si. 27, 98, etc.	The plant cooked as pot-herb <i>Leucas linifolia</i> Spreng.	The plant cooked as pot-herb	As an aid to elimination

TABLE 3: MEDICINAL PLANTS &amp; PLANT PRODUCTS

171. KŪVALA Sī. 4, 10, etc.	Small jujuba plant <i>Ziziphus sativus</i> Gaertn.	The fruits taken alone	As cordial and purgative
172. LAKSHMANA Sī. 27, 101	Mandugora plant <i>Atropa megalagora</i> Linn.	Cooked as pot-herb	Constipation
173. LĀMĀJĀKA Sī. 3, 29	Geranium grass <i>Anthropogon iwaranewuya</i> Jons.	The powdered and dried leaves for external application	Minor skin eruptions, body-odour
174. LĀNGALIKI Sī. 3, 38	Superb lily <i>Iphomea pes-caprae</i> Linn.	Inhalation of the fresh or dried powdered petals; compounded with cow's urine (internal)	Labour pain, pruritus, dermatosis as laxative
175. LASUNA Sī. 2, 3	Garlic plant <i>Allium sativum</i> Linn.	'The spice used alone or in prescriptions (internal and external)	Rhinitis, skin diseases, intestinal worms, leprosy, etc.; as aphrodisiac
176. LĀVĀLI Sī. 27, 145	Star gooseberry tree <i>Phyllanthus distichus</i> Muell.	The fruits used alone	As astringent, cordial and appetizer
177. LĀVĀNGA Ci. 26, 210, etc. Syn.: Lavangaka	Clove plant <i>Eugenia caryophyllata</i> Thunberg	The dried flowers alone or in medicinal oils	Cough, hiccup, vomiting, inflammatory conditions of the mouth and throat, halitosis
178. LODDHRA Sī. 3, 5, etc. Syn.: Lodhi, Tilvaka	Lodh tree <i>Symplocos racemosa</i> Roxb.	The dried root-bark used in internal and external prescriptions	Obstinate skin diseases, haemorrhoids, urinary diseases; as intestinal astringent
179. LONIKĀ Ci. 14, 123; Syn.: Lonā, Lonī	Parschane plant <i>Portulaca oleracea</i> Linn.	The plant cooked as vegetable	Piles
180. MADANA Sī. 1, 81, etc. Syn.: Pinditaka	Emetic nut <i>Randia dumetorum</i> Lamk.	The nuts and seeds used in various prescriptions, containing honey and rock-salt, for internal use	Fever, piles, dermatosis, chronic rhinitis, coryza, etc.; as emetic and purgative
181. MADAYANTIKA Ci. 10, 21, etc. Syn.: Medika	Henna plant <i>Lawsonia alba</i> Lamk.	The entire plant as ingredient of medicinal ghee for internal and external use	Epilepsy, malignant jaundice, grey hairs, etc.
182. MADHUPARNI Sī. 3, 21, etc. Syn.: Madhuvrīsa, Madhukapupa, Madhukapusi	Mohua tree; Indian butter tree <i>Bassia latifolia</i> Roxb.	The fruits taken alone or made into alcoholic beverages	Rheumatism, fever, spleen diseases, dyspepsia, etc.; for rejuvenation and virility
183. MAHĀMEDA Sī. 4, 9/1, etc. Syn.: Satamūli, Satāvari, Satapadi	Indian asparagus <i>Asparagus racemosus</i> Willd. or <i>A. sermentosa</i> Willd.	Cooked as vegetable; the bark and leaves used in prescriptions (internal)	As analgesic and as an aid to prolongation of life
184. MAHĀŚRĀVANI Ci. 3, 253, etc. Syn.: Mahāśāvankā, Alambuṣā	East Indian globe-thistle <i>Sphaeranthus indicus</i> Linn.	A decoction of the plant, used in prescriptions (internal)	Fever, rheumatism; for rejuvenation

TABLE 3  
*Medicinal Plants and Plant Products and their Uses—(Contd.)*

Name in Caraka; reference, and synonyms if any	Modern and botanical names	Mode of use	Medicinal uses in
185. MAKUṢTHA Sū. 26, 84, etc. Syn.: Makuṣṭhaka	Moth bean <i>Phaseolus acornifolius</i> Jach.	The dried beans cooked as food	Fever, haemothermia, consumption and wasting diseases
186. MĀLATI Sū. 5, 73, etc. Syn.: Jati, Grandhamālati	Malabar nutmeg plant <i>Agarosma caryophyllata</i> G. Don.	The stalks used in decoctions; also the essential oil of the petals in prescriptions (external)	Dermatosis, female diseases, etc.; for oral hygiene
187. MĀMSI Ci. 7, 87, etc. Syn.: Jaṭamāṇsi, Jati, Jaṭā, Lomasā, Nālādā	Musk-root plant <i>Nardostachys jatamansi</i> De.	The dried roots or leaves used in prescriptions (external and internal)	Skin diseases, piles, rectal prolapse, toxicosis, urinary calculus, etc.
188. MANDŪKAPARNI Sū. 27, 95, etc. Syn.: Maṇḍūkāparṇikā, Maṇḍuki	Indian pennywort <i>Hydrocotyle asiatica</i> Linn.	A decoction of the leaves used internally	CARAKA SAMHITĀ
189. MANJUṢTHĀ Sū. 4, 10/2, etc.	Indian madder <i>Rubia cordifolia</i> Linn.	The powdered dried roots and fruits used in prescriptions (internal)	Skin diseases and diseases of the spleen
190. MARICA Sū. 2, 3, etc.	Black pepper plant <i>Piper nigrum</i> Linn.	The dried seeds used as spice or in prescriptions (internal)	Pectoral lesions, diarrhoea, etc.; for rejuvenation
191. MARISA Sū. 27, 100	Gangetic amaranth plant <i>Amaranthus gangeticus</i> Linn.	Cooked as pot-herb	Rhinitis, anaemia, fainting, consumption, cough, etc.
192. MADHUKA Sū. 2, 7, etc. Syn.: Atirāśa, Madhurasā, Madhuli, Madhyayasthikā, Madhuyasṭyāhvā, Yaṣṭhimadhu, Yaṣṭhimadhuka	Liquorice plant <i>Glycyrrhiza glabra</i> Linn.	The stalks used alone and in various prescriptions (internal)	Cough, hiccup, fever, spleen disorders; as an aid to rejuvenation
193. MARUBAKA Ka. 1, 23	Sweet marjoram <i>Origanum majorana</i> Linn.	A paste of the seeds in prescriptions (internal)	As emetic
194. MASA' Sū. 2, 28, etc. Syn.: Kuruvanda	Black-gram plant <i>Phaseolus mungo</i> Linn.	As ingredient of gruel, decoctions, medicinal oil, etc. (internal)	Suppurations, rheumatism, etc.; as an aid to prolongation of youth
195. MASAPARNI Sū. 4, 9, etc. Syn.: Vajramūli, Māṣaparnikā, Rṣyaproktā	<i>Terennus habialis</i> Spreng.	Cooked as food; the paste as ingredient of prescriptions (internal)	Fever, rheumatic conditions; for longevity
196. MASURA Sū. 27, 28, etc. Syn.: Masuraka	<i>Lens esculenta</i> Moench.	Cooked as food or as ingredient of prescriptions (internal)	Gripping pain, haemothermia, spleen diseases, etc.

TABLE 3 : MEDICINAL PLANTS &amp; PLANT PRODUCTS

197. MATSYASAKA Gi. 1/3, 24	<i>Alternanthera sessilis</i> R. Br.	The entire plant used in prescriptions (external and internal)	As an aid to memory, intelligence, and bright complexion
198. MATULANGA Sū. 4, 10, etc.	Pomelo tree <i>Citrus decumana</i> Linn.	The tendrils of the flowers used internally	Nausea, anaemia, colic pain, jaundice, suppurated conditions, etc.
199. MEDĀ Sū. 4, 9/1, etc.	<i>Litsaea sebifera</i> Pers.	The sap or a decoction of the bark, used in prescriptions (internal)	Dysentery, diarrhoea, rheumatism; as promotor of longevity
200. MESAŚRNGI Gi. 3, 267, etc. Syn. : Mesavāṇīkā, Mesavalli	Indian screw tree <i>Helicteres isora</i> Linn.	A decoction of the leaves, used in prescriptions (internal)	Fever
201. MRGALINDIKA Sū. 25, 49	Chinese gooseberry tree <i>Averrhoa carambola</i> Linn.	The fruits fermented to a beer-like liquor	Insomnia, depression, anorexia, etc.
202. MUDGA Sū. 21, 25	Green gram <i>Phaseolus radiatus</i> Linn. or <i>P. aurca Prain</i> or <i>P. sublobatus</i> Roxb.	Used as a pulse in diet	Excessive obesity, urinary diseases, etc.; as a nourishing food
203. MUDGAPARNI Gi. 7, 123, etc. Syn. : Mudgaparnī	<i>Phaseolus trilobus</i> Ait.	As above	Dermatosis, rheumatic conditions, etc.; for longevity
204. MUKULAKA Sū. 7, 123, etc.	Edible pine tree <i>Pinus gerardiana</i> Wall.	The plant used in decoctions (internal)	Suppurated swellings, urinary diseases, etc.
205. MŪLAKA Sū. 27, 169, etc.	Garden radish <i>Raphanus sativus</i> Linn.	The tender tubers taken cooked or used in prescriptions (external and internal)	Discordance of the three humors (tranquillizer), skin diseases, oedema, alcoholism, etc.
206. MUNJATAKA Gi. 22, 30, etc.	Salep or salem plant <i>Eulophia camenae</i> Wall.	The juice of the roots, used alone, in prescriptions, and in enema (internal and external)	Morbid thirst, leucorrhoea, irregular fever, etc.; as aphrodisiac
207. MŪRVĀ Sū. 11, 11, etc. Syn. : Mūrvī, Guduchi	<i>Sansevieria roxburghia</i> Schott.	The dried flowers and leaves used in prescriptions (internal)	Fever, vomiting, cough, etc.; as appetizer
208. MUSKAKA Gi. 15, 189, etc.	Parula tree <i>Stereospermum sauvagei</i> De.	The alkaline ash of the leaves and bark, used in prescriptions	Anaemia, piles, all types of throat affections
209. MUSTĀ Sū. 3, 5, etc. Syn. : Musta, Mustaka	Nut grass <i>Cyperus rotundus</i> Linn.	The grass dried, powdered and soaked in ox-bile, used in prescriptions (internal and external)	Obstinate skin diseases, wounds, paralytic conditions, urinary diseases, etc.
210. NĀDĪ Sū. 27, 97	<i>Ipomoea aquatica</i> Forsk.	Cooked as pot-herb	As digestive and regulator of bile secretion
211. NĀGABALĀ Gi. 1/1, 45, etc. Syn. : Kṣaragandhā	Gingo-fruit tree <i>Sida spinosa</i> Linn.	A decoction of the dried roots, used in prescriptions (internal)	Seminal weakness, general debility, chest affections, etc.

TABLE 3  
*Medicinal Plants and Plant Products and their Uses—(Contd.)*

Name in Caraka; reference, and synonyms if any	Modern and botanical names	Mode of use	Medical uses in
212. NAGARANGA <i>Sū. 27</i> , 156	Orange tree <i>Citrus aurantium</i> Linn.	The fruits used alone	As cordial and digestive
213. NALA <i>Ci. 4</i> , 103, etc.	Nodding reed <i>Phragmites karka</i> Trin.	A decoction of the reeds, used in prescriptions (internal and external)	Haemothermia, fever, herpes, erysipelas, etc.
214. NĀLIKA <i>Ci. 28</i> , 152	Hairy onosma tree <i>Onosma echoides</i> Linn.	The buds used as ingredient of medicinal oil (internal)	Cough, consumption, shallow complexion, pectoral lesions, etc.
215. NANDITAKA <i>Vi. 8</i> , 140	Oval-leaved fig tree <i>Ficus retusa</i> Linn.	The dried fruits as ingredient of prescriptions (internal)	Imbalance of the humors (tranquillizer)
216. NAVAMALIKĀ <i>Ci. 26</i> , 184	Jasmine <i>Jasminum sambac</i> Ait.	The petals and leaves as ingredients of nasal medication	Affections of the head
217. NIVARA <i>Ci. 4</i> , 36, etc. Syn.: Munidhanya, Trividhanya	Wild rice plant <i>Hygrophila aristata</i> Ness.	The cereal used as food	Haemothermia
218. NICULĀ <i>Sū. 2</i> , 10, etc. Syn.: Hijala, Dhatriphala	Hizal tree <i>Barringtonia acutangula</i> Gaertn.	The fruits and leaves used in alkaline decoction or paste in prescriptions (internal)	Abdominal and splenic disorders, jaundice, etc.; as purgative
219. NIKOCAKA <i>Sū. 27</i> , 157	Levantine pistachio-nut tree <i>Pistacia vera</i> Linn.	The dried and shelled nuts used as diet	Anæmia, wasting diseases; as roborant and aphrodisiac
220. NILIKA <i>Ci. 26</i> , 12, etc. Syn.: Nilā	Indigo plant <i>Indigofera tinctoria</i> Linn.	The leaves as ingredient of rectal suppository or enema	Retention of urine, flatus, acute constipation
221. NIMBA <i>Sū. 3</i> , 3, etc. Syn.: Nimba, Sutikitala	Margosa tree <i>Azadirachta indica</i> Juss.	Paste or decoction of all parts of the plant, used in prescriptions (external and internal)	Skin diseases, urinary diseases, fever, and a large number of other ailments
222. NIRGUNDI <i>Sū. 4</i> , 11, etc. Syn.: Nilamirgundi, Sidihivara	Chaste tree <i>Vitis negundo</i> Linn.	Paste of the tubers and leaves, used in prescriptions (external)	Neuralgic pain in the supraclavical region, sinus, fistula, scabies, etc.
223. NISPĀVA <i>Sū. 27</i> , 100, etc. Syn.: Simbi	Goa-bean plant <i>Dolichos lablab</i> Linn.	The seeds cooked as vegetable	Irregular bowel movements
224. PADMAKA <i>Sū. 3</i> , 24, etc. Syn.: Padmagandhi	Bird cherry <i>Prunus padus</i> Roxb.	The root-stalls or the fruits used in prescriptions (external and internal)	Headache, fever, cough, rheumatic conditions, etc.

TABLE 3: MEDICINAL PLANTS &amp; PLANT PRODUCTS

225. PALĀNDU <i>Sū. 27</i> , 175, etc. <i>Syn.:</i> Raktakanda	Onion plant <i>Allium cepa</i> Linn.	The tubers and the stalks in vegetable salad and soups, or taken alone	Hemorrhage, scanty stools, cough, hiccup, etc.; as appetizer and aphrodisiac
226. PALĀNGKYA <i>Sū. 27</i> , 100	Indian spinach <i>Spinacea oloracea</i> Linn.	The plant cooked as pot-herb	Irregular bowel movements
227. PALASA <i>Sū. 2</i> , 13, etc. <i>Syn.:</i> Kimpukka	Bengal kino tree <i>Butea frondosa</i> Roxb.	The juice of the roots, bark, leaves, etc. in external ointments and ingredient of medicinal ghee	Acute constipation, colic, dysuria, skin diseases, etc.
228. PANASA <i>Sū. 27</i> , 143, etc. <i>Syn.:</i> Kaniphala	Jack-fruit tree <i>Artocarpus integrifolia</i> Linn.	The fully ripe fruits as diet	Intestinal astringent
229. PARPATAKA <i>Sū. 27</i> , 97, etc. <i>Syn.:</i> Baratika, Pamsuparyaya, Parpata	Trailing rungia <i>Rangia repens</i> Nees.	Decoction of the leaves, used in prescriptions (internal)	Fever, haemothermia, diarrhoea, etc.
230. PARUSAKA <i>Sū. 4</i> , 13, etc. <i>Syn.:</i> Parusa	Asiatic grewia <i>Grewia asiatica</i> Linn.	The fruits used alone or in prescriptions; decoction of the leaves, roots or bark, used internally	Fever, acute alcoholism, spleen diseases, cough, rheumatism, etc.; as pungative
231. PĀSANAMEDĀ <i>Sū. 4</i> , 15, etc. <i>Syn.:</i> Silamedā, Pāgapabheda, Pāṣāṇabidhi	Indian rock-foil <i>Coleosanthus anthoxanthus</i> Lour.	The dried and powdered leaves with cow's urine (internal)	Urinary stones; as diuretic
232. PATALA <i>Sū. 2</i> , 11, etc. <i>Syn.:</i> Pātali	Trumpet-flower tree <i>Stereospermum chelonoides</i> De.	The decoction or paste of flowers and leaves, used in prescriptions (internal)	Constipation, fever, toxic conditions, etc.
233. PATHĀ <i>G. 3</i> , 204, etc. <i>Syn.:</i> Elastīla, Kucela, Vrittaparnī	<i>Stephania hermadafolia</i> Walp.	The roots and leaves used in prescriptions (internal)	Fever, urinary disorders, consumption, piles, etc.
234. PATOLA <i>Sū. 3</i> , 8, etc.	Wild snake-gourd, or pulbul plant <i>Trichosanthes diocea</i> Roxb.	Decoction of the leaves, used internally; the gourds cooked as vegetable	Puritus, pimples; all types of fever, diarrhoea, etc.; as appetizer
235. PATRA <i>Sū. 3</i> , 29, etc.	Cinnamon tree <i>Cinnamomum tamala</i> Fr. Nees.	The dried leaves and bark used in prescriptions (external and internal)	Body-odour, fever, anaemia, cardiac disorders, etc.; as an aid to rejuvenation
236. PATTURA <i>Sū. 27</i> , 100, etc.	Coxcomb tree <i>Celastia argentea</i> Linn.	A decoction of the seeds, used in prescriptions; the plant cooked as pot-herb (internal)	Dysuria, fever, habitual constipation, etc.
237. PAYASYĀ <i>Sū. 4</i> , 9, etc.	White yam <i>Ipomea paniculata</i> R. Br.	Used as vegetable	Emaciation, debility, loss of voice, etc.; as an aid to rejuvenation
238. PHALGU <i>Sū. 27</i> , 128, etc. <i>Syn.:</i> Manjula	<i>Ficus carica</i> Linn.	A paste of the figs in prescriptions; also cooked as vegetable	Emaciation and debility; urinary stone

## CARAKA SAMHITĀ

TABLE 3  
*Medicinal Plants and Plant Products and their Uses—(Contd.)*

Name in Caraka; reference, and synonyms if any	Modern and botanical names	Mode of use	Medicinal uses in
239. PHENILA Gi. 29, 110 Syn.: Arispa	Sapindus trifoliatus Linn. or S. mukorossi Gaertn.	A decoction of seeds and fruits, used in prescriptions (internal)	Fever, rheumatism
240. PHĀNJĪ Sū. 27, 98	Bind-weed <i>Rives ornata</i> Chois.	Cooked as pot-herb	As an aid to elimination
241. PILU Sū. 2, 4, etc. Syn.: Piluka	Tooth-brush tree <i>Salvadora persica</i> Linn.	The fruits used alone or in prescriptions (internal)	Rhinitis, fainting, hemicrania, etc.; as purgative
242. PIPPALI Sū. 2, 3, etc. Syn.: Māgadhi, Vādehī	Long-pepper plant <i>Piper longum</i> Linn.	The dried flowers, fruits and roots used as ingredients of prescriptions; also as spice in cooking	Used in a large number of diseases; as digestive
243. PLAKSA Sū. 4, 15, etc. Syn.: Karpāti, Pitāna	Yellow-barked fig tree <i>Ficus infectoria</i> Roxb.	A decoction of the tender leaves, used in prescriptions (internal)	Diarrhoea, haemorrhīa, seminal weakness, etc.
244. PRĀCINĀMALAKA Sū. 27, 146	Indian prune <i>Flacourzia cataphracta</i> Roxb.	The fruits used alone	After-effects of poisoning
245. PRĀVALAJĀTI Gi. 3, 207, etc.	Chameli tree <i>Jasminum grandiflorum</i> Linn.	The sprouts or dried flowers used in prescriptions (external)	Coryza, nasal haemorrhage, fever, dermatosis, etc.
246. PRIYĀLA Sū. 3, 21, etc. Syn.: Priyālaka, Rājatana	Buchanan's mango <i>Buchanania latifolia</i> Roxb.	The fruits used alone; the expressed oil in prescriptions (external)	Rheumatism, urticaria, fever, morbid thirst, etc.
247. PRIYANGU Sū. 4, 15, etc. Syn.: Priyāka, Priyā	Perfumed cherry <i>Aglaia roxburghiana</i> Miq.	The fruits used alone; the seeds used as cereal	Fever, haemothermia, dermatosis, piles, ear-ache, etc.; as intestinal astringent
248. PRSNIPARNI Sū. 2, 11, etc. Syn.: Prthakparni, Simhapuspī	Pointed-leaved uraria plant <i>Uraria lagopoides</i> De.	The entire plant used in prescriptions (internal)	Misperistasis, diarrhoea, fever, cough, consumption, etc.
249. PRTHVIKĀ Sū. 5, 20, etc. Syn.: Vṛhadēla, Prthvi, Elākī, Aindri, Indrāni Sthūlailā	Greater cardamom <i>Amomum subulatum</i> Roxb.	The dried fruits used alone or in prescriptions (internal)	Hemicrania, rhinitis, fever, skin eruptions, etc.
250. PUGA Sū. 5, 77	Betel-nut tree <i>Areca catechu</i> Linn.	The dried nuts used alone	Halitosis, loss of appetite

TABLE 3: MEDICINAL PLANTS &amp; PLANT PRODUCTS

251. PUNARNAVĀ <i>Sū. 2</i> , 12, etc. <i>Syn.:</i> Śvetamīla, Śveta-punarnavā, Vṛścīrā, Tāmalakya	Pig weed or Hog weed <i>Borhaavia repens</i> Linn. (Varieties : <i>B. diffuse</i> & <i>B. procumbens</i> )	A decoction of the leaves and roots, used in prescriptions (internal)	Constipation, skin diseases, oedema, urinary diseases; as an aid to rejuvenation
252. RĀJĀDANA <i>Ci. 30</i> , 97	Indian ape-flower tree <i>Mimosa hexandra</i> Roxb.	Paste of the leaves and fruits, used in medicated ghee	Menstrual disorders
253. RAKTACANDANA <i>Ci. 30</i> , 92 <i>Syn.:</i> Nakuli, Gandhanātūli, Rasānā	Red sandal-wood tree <i>Pterocarpus santalinus</i> Linn.	A decoction of the leaves, or the powdered bark, used internally	Bleeding piles, diarrhoea, morbid menstrual discharges •
254. RASNA <i>Sū. 3</i> , 22, etc. <i>Syn.:</i> Nakuli, Gandhanātūli, Rasānā	Indian groundsel <i>Vanda roxburghii</i> Br.	Paste of the roots and rhizomes, used in prescriptions (internal and external)	Rheumatic conditions, chest-pains, fever, oedema, heart diseases, etc.
255. ROHINI <i>Sū. 4</i> , 10, etc. <i>Syn.:</i> Vivasā, Patrāṅga	Indian red wood tree <i>Sympidia ferruginea</i> Juss.	Decoction of the bark, used in prescriptions (internal and external)	Debility, chronic skin diseases; as a purifier for breast-milk
256. ROHISA <i>Ci. 3</i> , 267, etc.	Ceranium grass <i>Andropogon schoenanthus</i> Linn.	A decoction of the grass and roots, used in prescriptions (internal)	Fever, abdominal diseases, splenic disorders, jaundice, etc.
257. ROHITAKA <i>Ci. 16</i> , 81, etc. <i>Syn.:</i> Sadāpusā, Śālmalikā	White cedar <i>Amara rotunda</i> W. & A.	The powdered bark, used in decoction as ingredient of medicinal ghee, etc.	Urinary disorders, enlarged spleen, jaundice, anaemia, intestinal worms, etc. •
258. RUJHA <i>Ci. 23</i> , 80, etc. <i>Syn.:</i> Vṛksaruhā, Śekhara, Nilāvalli	Wild orchid <i>Loranthus falcatus</i> Linn.	A decoction of the leaves, used in prescriptions (internal)	Cataract, night blindness, tumours, scabies, etc.
259. SĀILEYAKA <i>Ci. 3</i> , 267, etc. <i>Syn.:</i> Saileya, Śilādadrū, Śailaka	Lichen <i>Permelia parlatia</i> Esche.	In prescriptions (external and internal)	Fever, toxicosis, disorders of the first humor •
260. SĀIREYA <i>Sū. 14</i> , 32	Yellow nail-dye plant <i>Barleria prionitis</i> Linn.	Paste of the leaves as ingredient of hot poultices and steam bath	Stiffness of limbs, enlargement of scrotum, sciatica, etc.
261. SĀIVALA <i>Ci. 4</i> , 103, etc. <i>Syn.:</i> Jalaja	Moss <i>Valtinenia spiralis</i> Linn.	In prescriptions (external and internal)	Haemothermia, giddiness, morbid thirst, rheumatism •
262. SĀLA <i>Sū. 4</i> , 18, etc. <i>Syn.:</i> Sarja, Sarjaraśa, Sarjaka, Dirghāśākā, Ásvakarṇa	Sal tree <i>Shorea robusta</i> Gaertn.	Decoction of the resin and leaves, used internally	Urinary disorders, pectoral lesions, seminal weakness; as sedative
263. SĀLEYA <i>Ci. 4</i> , 75	Common fennel or sweet fennel <i>Foeniculum vulgare</i> Gaertn. or <i>Trigonella foenum gracuum</i> Linn.	The bark made into paste with sandal-wood and used externally or internally	Bronchial asthma

## CARAKA SAMHITA

TABLE 3  
Medicinal Plants and Plant Products and their Uses—(Contd.)

Name in Caraka; reference, and synonyms if any	Modern and botanical names	Mode of use	Medicinal uses in
264. SALAPARNI Sū. 2, 11, etc. <i>Syn.:</i> Triparni, Sthira, Vidarigandha	Dinghamula, Tick trefoil, <i>Desmodium gangeticum</i> De.	Decoction of the leaves, used in prescriptions (internal)	Constipation, diarrhoea, oedema, fever, etc.
265. SALLAKI Sū. 4, 15, etc. <i>Syn.:</i> Kuntarika, Rasāla	Indian olibanum <i>Boswellia serrata</i> Roxb.	A paste or decoction of the bark alone or soaked in ghee (internal)	Cough, hiccup, nausea, etc.
266. SALMALI Sū. 27, 99, etc. <i>Syn.:</i> Kukkuji, Nirgandhapuspi, Raktauspala, Moca	Red silk cotton tree <i>Bombar malabaricum</i> De.	The fresh flowers or resin used (internal and external)	Haemothermia, dysentery, rectal prolapse, etc.
267. SAMANGA Ci. 4, 76, etc. <i>Syn.:</i> Samipatra, Prasarinī, Samkocini	Sensitive plant <i>Mimosa pudica</i> Linn.	Paste or decoction in prescriptions (external and internal)	Haemothermia, piles, diarrhoea, etc.
268. SAMI Sū. 25, 49, etc. <i>Syn.:</i> Mangalya, Siva, Supatra, Sankuphalika	<i>Prosopis spicigera</i> Linn.	The fruits and bark used in decoction (internal)	As intestinal astringent
269. SANĀ Sū. 27, 99, etc. <i>Syn.:</i> Kaputika, Tvalksara	Bengal hemp plant <i>Crotalaria juncea</i> Linn.	The leaves cooked as vegetable; a decoction of the flowers and roots, used in prescriptions (internal)	Dysentery, irregular bowel movements
270. SANKHAPUSPI Ci. 1/1, 58, etc. <i>Syn.:</i> Medhya, Kiriti, Sainthyaakusumā, Strupapi	Dankuni plant <i>Cassia dentata</i> Roem.	The leaves used in prescriptions (internal)	Cough, rheumatic conditions, etc.
271. SANKHINI Sū. 1, 81, etc. <i>Syn.:</i> Tiktala, Akṣipidaka, Yavatikā	<i>Ctenolipis cerasiformis</i> H. & K.	Decoction of the fruits as ingredient of prescriptions and enema (internal and external)	Disorders of assimilation as purgative and roborant
272. SAPTAPARNA Sū. 3, 4, etc. <i>Syn.:</i> Sarada, Devavisa, Madagandhā	Dita <i>Alstonia scholaris</i> R. Br.	A paste of the bark, used in ointments	Chronic skin diseases, urinary diseases, oedema, etc.
273. SARALA Ci. 3, 267, etc.	Himalayan pine tree <i>Pinus longifolia</i> Roxb.	A decoction of the leaves and bark, used in prescriptions (internal)	Fever, loss of appetite, facial paralysis, etc.
274. SARIVA Sū. 4, 10, etc. <i>Syn.:</i> Nagajihvā, Anantamūla	Indian sarsaparila <i>Hemidesmus indicus</i> Br.	The leaves used alone in decoction (internal)	Swallow complexion, loss of voice, dysentery, cough, menstrual disorders, etc.
275. SARSAPA Sū. 2, 3, etc. <i>Syn.:</i> Rajaksavaka, Kattaka	Rape plant <i>Brassica campestris</i> Linn. (Varieties— <i>B. sonor</i> , <i>B. juncea</i> , <i>B. napus</i> )	The powdered seeds or the expressed oil used alone or in prescriptions or in suppositories (external and internal)	Rhinitis, hemicrania, pruritus, dysuria, coryza, acute intestinal gas formation, etc.

**276. SATAKUSUMA** *Ci.* **12**, **16**

**277. SATALA** *Ci.* **13**, **128**

*Paederomus graveolens* Benth.

Extract of the plant as ingredient of enema

*Acacia concinna* De.

The roots used in prescriptions (internal)

**278. SIGRA** *Sū.* **3**, **8**, etc.  
*Sym.:* Sobhāñjana, Sigru, Haritātaka, Raktaka

Drum-stick plant  
*Moringa pterygofermum* Gaertn.

The powdered bark, root, and dried sap used in prescriptions or in steaming mixtures (internal and external)

**279. SIMBITAKA** *Sū.* **17**, **142**

Apple tree

*Pyrus malus* Linn.

The fruit used alone

**280. SIMSAPA** *Sū.* **1/2**, **12**, etc.  
*Sym.:* Kṛṣṇasimhapā

Rose-wood tree

*Dalbergia sissoo* Roxb.

The expressed juice of the leaves or tender bark, used in prescriptions (internal)

**281. SIRIṢA** *Sū.* **2**, **5**, etc.

Siris tree

*Albizia lebbek* Benth.

Powdered seeds, bark and leaves used alone or in prescriptions (external and internal)

**282. ŚLESMĀTAKA** *Sū.* **4**, **11**, etc.  
*Sym.:* Bhūkarvudāra, Uddālaka, Selu

Assyrian plum

*Cordia mixa* Roxb. or *C. obliqua* Willd.

The bark made into ointment for local application

**283. SOMARĀJI** *Sū.* **2**, **24**, etc.  
*Sym.:* Somavalli, Somavallikā, Soma, Cāndri

Babchi tree

*Psoralis coriifolia* Linn.

The seeds cooked in gruel, or used in prescriptions (internal)

**284. SPRKKA** *Ci.* **12**, **66**, etc.  
*Sym.:* Kujīla, Devaputrika, Kujīka, Nakha-pipi

Melilot plant

*Melilotus indica* All.

The pulverized seeds as ingredient of pills

**285. ŚRNĀGĀTAKA** *Ci.* **2/2**, **14**, etc.  
*Sym.:* Śringamūla Trikoṭa, Śringata

Indian water chestnut

*Trapa bispinosa* Roxb.

The shelled nuts taken alone or in prescriptions (internal)

**286. STRHAUNEYAKA** *Ci.* **3**, **267**, etc.

Glory tree

*Clerodendron infortunatum*

A decoction of the bark, used internally

**287. SUDHĀ** *Ci.* **5**, **107**, etc.  
*Sym.:* Smuk, Guda, Nanda, Nistrīśapatraka

Thorny milk-hedge or dull hedge

*Euphorbia nerifolia* Linn.

The milky juice used in prescriptions (internal)

**288. SUKARI** *Ci.* **9**, **46**

*Tacca integrifolia* Fors. or *T. integrifolia* Ker.

Starch from the tubers, used in medicinal jelly

**289. SUNISANNAKA** *Ci.* **18**, **81**, etc.  
*Sym.:* Sitimāra, Sitāvari, Parnāka, Svastiā

Marsilia

*Marsilia quadrifolia* Figar.

The sprouts cooked as vegetable

Inguinal swelling, colic pain, menorrhagia, piles, etc.

Abdominal diseases, poisoning, hardened spleen, jaundice, etc.

Anosmia, fainting, chronic skin eruptions, painful piles, etc. •

As intestinal astringent

Sensitivity, debility

Hemicrania, urinary anomalies, chronic skin diseases, toxic conditions, etc.

Poisoning; for purification of breast-milk

Toxicosis, night-blindness, tumour, cataract

Fever, emaciation, obstructed and difficult labour.

Fever; as an emetic.

Impotency, chest-pain, loss of voice, urinary disorders, etc.

Oedema, piles, gastro-intestinal irritations, etc.

Epileptic fits, insanity

Cough, spastic condition of the leg muscles, etc.

TABLE 3: MEDICINAL PLANTS & PLANT PRODUCTS

**TABLE 3**  
**Medicinal Plants and Plant Products and their Uses—(Contd.)**

Name in Caraka; reference, and synonyms if any	Modern and botanical names	Mode of use	Medical uses in
290. SURASA Sū. 3, 8, etc. <i>Syn.:</i> Tulasi, Bhūtaghni, Kuteraka, Suravalli, Sulabha, Mañjariśā	Holy basil plant <i>Ocimum sanctum</i> Linn.	A paste or extract of the leaves, used in prescriptions (internal)	Skin eruptions, fever, splenic disorders, toxicosis, paralysis, etc.
291. TĀDAKA Sū. 25, 49	Palmyra palm <i>Borassus flabellifer</i> Linn.	Various parts fermented into beer-like liquor	Insomnia, depression, anorexia
292. TAGARA Ci. 6, 27, etc. <i>Syn.:</i> Kufila, Kālānusārvā, Dipana, Saṭha	Indian valerian <i>Valariana harrwitzii</i> Wall.	A decoction of the roots, used in prescriptions (internal)	Fever, urinary diseases, poisonous bites, etc.
293. TALAMŪLI Ci. 17, 75	Black musali plant <i>Curculigo orchoides</i> Gaertn.	The powdered roots as ingredient of smoking mixture	Cough
294. TĀLISA Ci. 8, 145, etc. <i>Syn.:</i> Karicchāda, Tālisapatraka, Tamalakipatra	Silver fir tree <i>Abies webbiana</i> Lindl.	The powdered leaves used in prescriptions (internal)	Cough, anaemia, digestive disorders, colic pain, etc.
295. TAMĀLA Ci. 3, 267, etc. <i>Syn.:</i> Gernedaka, Rāma, Tamālaka, Sukumāraka	Mysore gamboge tree <i>Garcinia xanthocarpa</i> Hook.	A decoction of the fruits and seeds, used in prescriptions (internal)	Skin eruptions, toxic conditions, etc.
296. TAMALAKI Ci. 5, 119, etc. <i>Syn.:</i> Viśvaparnī, Bahuphalā, Uñicāta, Tamalikā, Cīrāti	Feather-foil plant <i>Phyllanthus niruri</i> Linn.	A decoction of the plant, used in prescriptions (internal)	Blood poisoning, jaundice, herpes, etc.
297. TAMBŪLA Sū. 5, 77, etc. <i>Syn.:</i> Bhujangalatā, Nāgavalli, Nāgini, Tambulavalli	Betel-leaf plant <i>Piper betle</i> Linn.	The leaves chewed along with betel-nut, cloves, etc.	Halitosis
298. TANDULĀ Ci. 4, 73, etc. <i>Syn.:</i> Akṣata	Rice plant <i>Orzya sativa</i> Linn.	Cereal food; ingredient of gruel, sweetmeat, etc.	As vitalizer and roborant
299. TANDULIYAKA Ci. 23, 198, etc. <i>Syn.:</i> Bahuviryā, Kandera, Viṣaghna, Mīṣeṇa	Prickly amaranth <i>Amaranthus polygamus</i> Will.	The entire plant cooked as vegetable; also as ingredient of enema	Intoxication, toxic conditions, internal haemorrhage
300. TANKA Sū. 27, 136	Pear tree <i>Pyrus communis</i> Linn.	The fruit used alone	As intestinal astringent
301. TARUNI Sū. 10, 31 <i>Syn.:</i> Devakēśā, Bhrigavallabha, Suvṛita	Cabbage rose <i>Rosa centifolia</i> Linn.	The petals as ingredient of enema	As above

TABLE 3: MEDICINAL PLANTS &amp; PLANT PRODUCTS

302. TILA <i>Sū.</i> 3, 14, etc. <i>Syn.: Sinchaphala</i>	Sesame plant <i>Sesamum indicum</i> Linn.	The expressed oil from seeds, or alkaline ash, used in prescriptions (external and internal)	Skin eruptions, pain in vagina, acute constipation, chest complaints, etc.
303. THAPARNI <i>Ci.</i> 3, 267, etc.	<i>Gymnandropsis pentaphylla</i> De.	The entire plant and roots used in prescriptions (internal)	Fever
304. TINDUKA <i>Sū.</i> 25, 40, etc. <i>Syn.: Nilasāra. Tinduka.</i>	False mangosteen <i>Diospyros embryopteris</i> Pers.	The fruits used alone	Urticaria, phlegm, excessive bile secretion, piles, etc.
305. TINUSA <i>Ci.</i> 1/2, 12, etc. <i>Syn.: Citrakrt, Sakata</i>	Chariot tree <i>Ougeinia daibergioide,</i> Benth.	The freshly-expressed juice of the bark and stalks, used in prescriptions (internal)	Fever, debility; as a vitalizer
306. TRAYAMĀNA <i>Ci.</i> 3, 208, etc. <i>Syn.: Devabāla, Girijā, Girija, Trayamānika</i>	Zail plant <i>Delphinium zailii</i> Aitch.	Decoction of the plant, used in prescriptions (internal)	Rigor, high body-temperature, splenic disorders, chronic skin diseases, etc.
307. TRNASŪNYA <i>Sū.</i> 27, 145, etc. <i>Syn.: Laghupuspa, Haimi, Chunmaruha</i>	Screw pine <i>Pandanus tectorius</i> Linn.	The flowers used in decoctions	As antitoxic and febrifuge
308. TRVĀRTA <i>Sū.</i> 4, 13	Turpeth plant <i>Operacina turpethum</i> Manso.	The flowers and bark, used in prescriptions and as ingredient of enema (external and internal)	Skin eruptions, suppurrated wounds, fractures, etc; as laxative
309. TUDA <i>Sū.</i> 27, 135	Indian mulberry tree <i>Morinda citrifolia</i> Linn.	A decoction of the roots, used in prescriptions (internal)	As liver tonic
310. TUMBI <i>Ci.</i> 26, 15, etc. <i>Syn.: Iksavāku, Alāvu, Phalimi, Piṇḍaphala</i>	Bottle gourd <i>Lagenaria vulgaris</i> Scringe.	Infusion of the sprouts, fruits and seeds in milk, used as emetic	Cough, vomiting, tachycardia, poisoning, etc.
311. TURUŠKA <i>Ci.</i> 28, 153	Storax plant <i>Attingia excelsa</i> Noronha	Liquid exudate as ingredient of medicinal oil (internal)	Cough, consumption, debility, pectoral lesions, etc.
312. TUVARA <i>Ci.</i> 30, 124	<i>Artemisia officinalis</i> Linn.	A paste of the seeds for local application	Offensive smell from the vaginal passage
313. TVAC <i>Sū.</i> 3, 28	Cinnamon (bark) <i>Cinnamomum zeylanicum</i> Bl.	The powdered bark used alone or in prescriptions (internal and external)	Rigor, ear-ache, eye-ache, discharge from the ear, etc.
314. UDAKJRYAKA <i>Sū.</i> 2, 9	Prickly wood-climber <i>Caesalpinia digyna</i> Rottl.	A decoction of the root, used internally or in enema	Accumulation of morbid matter in the colon; as purgative
315. UDÜMBARA <i>Sū.</i> 5, 22, etc. <i>Syn.: Hemadughi, Kṣiravṛksa, Kṛnikanta</i>	Cluster fig tree <i>Ficus glomerata</i> Roxb.	The powdered root-bark used for smoking; or as ingredient of prescriptions (internal)	Eye-ache, ear-ache, dental pain, suppurrated conditions, etc.
316. UÑCATAKA <i>Sū.</i> 12, 18/7	Blaffaris plant <i>Blepharis edulis</i> Pers.	Infusion of the plant in milk, used in nutritive enema.	Sexual debility

TABLE 3  
*Medicinal Plants and Plant Products and their Uses—(Contd.)*

Name in Caraka; reference, and synonyms if any	Modern and botanical names	Mode of use	Medicinal use, in
317. UPAKUNCIKĀ Gi. 13, 125, etc. Syn.: Kṛṣṇapāra, Bhedini, Bahugandhā	Small fennel plant <i>Nigella sativa</i> Linn.	The powdered seeds used in prescriptions (internal)	Acute constipation, colic pain, anal fistula, poisonous bites, etc.
318. UPODIKA Sū. 2, 33, etc. Syn.: Viśā, Madāsaka, Upodaki	Malabar spinach <i>Basella rubra</i> Linn.	As pot-herb or as an ingredient of gruel	Intoxication, diarrhoea, rheumatic conditions, etc.
319. UŚIRA Sū. 4, 10, etc. Syn.: Bahumūlaka, Indragupta, Sugandhimūla, Jatamedī	Cuscus grass <i>Andropogon squarrosus</i> Linn.	The powdered leaves or an infusion used in prescriptions (external and internal)	Senility, debility, fever, chronic skin diseases, toxicosis, piles, purupurated conditions, etc.
320. UTPALA Sū. 4, 15, etc. Syn.: Nilapatraka, Upalaka	Blue water-lily <i>Nymphaea stellata</i> Willd. or <i>N. Cyanea</i> Roxb.	The stalks, petals and seeds used in prescriptions (internal and external)	As above
321. VACA Sū. 2, 9, etc. Syn.: Ugragandhā, Jajlā, Vijayā, Bhadrā, Iṣṭapatrī	Sweet-flag plant <i>Acorus calamus</i> Linn.	The leaves and stalks in powder form or decoction used in prescriptions (internal)	Skin diseases, haemorrhage, fever, urinary diseases, etc.; as purgative, appetizer and vitalizer
*322. BALAKA Gi. 17, 124, etc.	Fragrant mallow plant <i>Paxtonia odorata</i> Willd.	A decoction of the root-bark as ingredient of medicinal syrup or sweetened infusion	Asthma, hiccup, acute nausea, toxicosis, etc.
323. VAMŚA Gi. 21, 125, etc. Syn.: Venu, Triḍabhava, Trivikṣīra	Spiny bamboo <i>Bambusa arundinacea</i> Retz.	A paste or decoction of the leaves or seeds, used in prescriptions (external and internal)	Acute suppurated conditions, poisonous bites, intestinal worms, excessive fat, etc.
324. VANJULA Sū. 4, 18, etc.	Country willow <i>Salix tetrasperma</i> Roxb.	The leaves used in infusion internally, or in enema	Excessive bile secretion; as sedative
325. VARAKA Sū. 27, 14, etc. Syn.: Rukṣa, Sthūlaphirangaka	Millet <i>Panicum miliaceum</i> Linn.	Cooked as cereal	As intestinal astringent and tranquilizer
326. VARTAKA Sū. 27, 162, etc. Syn.: Citraphala, Karatkini, Variaku, Hinguli.	Brinjal plant <i>Solanum melongena</i> Linn.	Cooked as vegetable	Indigestion, anaemia, cough, etc.
327. VARUNA Gi. 3, 267, etc. Syn.: Kumārāta, Asmarigrama	Sacred caper tree <i>Crataeva religiosa</i> Forst.	The sprouts and leaves, in decoction, used in prescriptions (external and internal)	Assimilation disorders, piles, etc.

TABLE 3: MEDICINAL PLANTS &amp; PLANT PRODUCTS

77

328. VĀSA Sū. 3, 3, etc. Syn.: Vāsaka	Malabar nut <i>Athalodaa nasica</i> Nees.	The leaves and flowers, or a decoction, used alone or in prescriptions (internal)	Hiccup, chronic skin diseases, fever, pulmonary consumption, etc.
329. VASTUKA Sū. 27, 88	White goose-foot plant <i>Chenopodium album</i> Linn.	The entire plant used in decoctions (internal)	Constipation, chest-pain
330. VATA Sū. 4, 15, etc. Syn.: Kṣīri, Nandi, Sungi, Standarūha	Banyan tree <i>Ficus bengalensis</i> Linn.	The fruits used alone or dried and powdered to form smoking mixture; also in decoction (internal)	Excessive urination, fever, toxicosis, etc.
331. VATĀMA Sū. 27, 157, etc. Syn.: Vātada	Indian almond tree <i>Terminalia catappa</i> Linn.	The seeds used alone or in prescriptions (internal)	Debility, emaciation, wasting diseases, anaemia, etc.; <sup>as</sup> aphrodisiac
332. VETASA Gi. 3, 258, etc. Syn.: Nikunica	Rattan cane <i>Calamus viminalis</i> Willd.	The leaves cooked as vegetable	Fever with rigor, haemothermia, morbid thirst, menstrual disorders, etc.
333. VIDANGA Sū. 1, 81, etc. Syn.: Bhasmaka, Ghosā, Citrabijā	Embelia plant <i>Embelia ribes</i> Burm f.	Used as dried powder, or the decoction in prescriptions (external and internal)	Chronic skin diseases, dysentery, diarrhoea, etc.; for oral hygiene, and as purgative.
334. VIKANGATA Sū. 27, 145, etc. Syn.: Vaikangata, Kantaki, Kanṭapada, Madhuparnī, Muduphalā	Thorny staff tree <i>Gymnosporia montana</i> Benth.	Decoction of the leaves, stalks and fruits, used in prescriptions (internal)	After-effects of poisons
335. VRKSĀMLA Gi. 11, 85, etc. Syn.: Chidamā, Bijamā	Wild mangosteen <i>Garcinia indica</i> Chois.	The fruits used alone or in prescriptions (internal)	Flatulence, oedema, chronic alcoholism, etc.; as cordial
336. VRŚCIKALI Gi. 9, 47, etc. Syn.: Kartasa, Amara, Kṣiravijāṇikā	Climbing nettle plant <i>Tragia involucrata</i> Linn.	Ingredient of medicinal ghee (internal)	As an aid to memory, intellect and growth of young children
337. VITĀNIKĀ Sū. 1, 78, etc.	Sinking swallow-wort plant <i>Dicentra exesta</i> R. Br.	A decoction of the plant, used in prescriptions (internal)	Assimilation disorders, constipation; as a purifier of breast-milk
338. YAMĀNI Gi. 6, 4	Bishop's weed <i>Corium copticum</i> Benth.	A decoction of the dried seeds, used in prescriptions (internal)	Indigestion, anaemia, piles, alcoholism, etc.
339. YAVA Sū. 2, 12	Barley plant <i>Hordeum vulgare</i> Linn.	As cereal food or in gruel	Constipation, throat diseases, dysentery, cough, vomiting, paralysis, etc.
340. YAVĀŚĀKA Gi. 3, 222, etc. Syn.: Sulṣmapatra, Tikṣṇataṇṭaka	Camel thorn or Khorasān thorn plant <i>Athagi manoram</i> Desu.	A decoction of the plant in prescriptions (internal)	Fever, haemothermia
341. YŪTHIKA Gi. 8, 129, etc. Syn.: Ambaṣṭhā, Balapupū, Cārumodā	Common jasmine <i>Jasminum auriculatum</i> Vale.	The sprouts cooked as vegetable; the leaves used in decoctions for prescriptions (internal)	Diarrhoea, colic pain, jaundice, etc.

\*Substances Nos. 44 and 322 have not been placed in their proper alphabetical order through mistake.

TABLE 4  
*Medicinal Substances of Mineral Origin and their Uses*

Name and reference	Modern equivalent	Mode of use or application	Medicinal uses in
1. ADRIJATU <i>Ci.</i> 16, 78 <i>Syn.:</i> ASMAJATU <i>Ci.</i> 12, 49; 16, 81 GIRIJACI. 1/3, 64; 21, 130, etc. SILAJATU <i>Sū.</i> 21, 24, etc. SILODBHEDA <i>Ci.</i> 15, 113; 30, 90	Mineral bitumen (exudate from ores)	(a) Internal—in linctus (b) Internal—in decoction (c) Internal—in powder mixture (d) Internal—taken alone (e) Internal—taken mixed with finely powdered diamond and plant-juices (f) Hard cutaneous eruptions, enlarged spleen	(a) Anaemia, oedema, jaundice, urinary diseases, excessive menstrual flow, fever, consumption, emaciation, etc. (b) Obesity, imbalance of the body humours, debility, etc. (c) Hard cutaneous eruptions, enlarged spleen (d) Intoxication, fainting (e) Malignant skin diseases; as a general remedy for all bodily ailments
2. AGARADHUMA <i>Ci.</i> 23, 41; <i>Sū.</i> 7, 24, 25; <i>Syn.:</i> 9, 38 GRIHADHUMA <i>Sū.</i> 3, 5 VESMADHUMA <i>Ci.</i> 23, 14	Soot from kitchen smoke	(a) External—in ointment (b) External—as rubbing powder (c) Ingredient of rectal suppositories (d) Internal—in linctus (e) Internal—in mixture	(a) Chronic skin diseases, poisonous bites (b) For extracting venom from poisonous bites (c) Flatulence, constipation, retention of urine (d) Throat affections (e) Poisoning
3. AGRYALAVANA <i>Ci.</i> 23, 96 <i>Syn.:</i> SAINDHAVA <i>Sū.</i> 1, 88; 5, 12, etc.; <i>Vi.</i> 8, 141; <i>Sū.</i> 3, 34, etc.; <i>Ci.</i> 1/1, 25; 2/4, 11, etc.	Rock-salt	(a) External—used in many different modes of application (b) Internal—used in many types of prescriptions	(a) & (b) For a very large number of pathological conditions and as a general tonic
4. ĀLA <i>Sū.</i> 1, 70; 3, 5, etc.; <i>Ci.</i> 9, 66; 18, 69, etc. <i>Syn.:</i> HARITĀLA <i>Sū.</i> 5, 26; <i>Ci.</i> 7, 114; 26, 196	Yellow orpiment (arsenious sulphide)	(a) Ingredient of medicinal cigars (b) External—in medicated oil (c) External—ingredient of oral gargle	(a) Imbalance of the first and third humors (b) Parasitic infections of the skin, eruptions and itchings (c) Mouth and throat diseases
5. AMRTASANGA <i>Ci.</i> 7, 114 <i>Syn.:</i> TUTTHA <i>Sū.</i> 3, 12; <i>Ci.</i> 7, 114, etc.	Blue vitriol-sulphate)	(copper (b) External—in dusting powder (c) External—in ointment	(a) Ringworm, scabies, herpes, etc. (b) Exanthema, cutaneous eruptions, eye-affections, piles, eczema, etc. (c) Mouth and throat diseases
6. ANJANA <i>Sū.</i> 1, 70; 3, 5 <i>Syn.:</i> SAUVIRANJANA <i>Sū.</i> 5, 15	Black sulphide of antimony	(a) External—in ointment (b) External—in ointment	Leucoderma, fistula, piles, dimness of vision, eye-diseases, etc.

TABLE 4: MINERAL SUBSTANCES

7. ANŪPALAVANA <i>Vi.</i> <b>8</b> , 141	Salt obtained by evaporation of well-water	Ingredient of rectal enema	As purgative
8. ĀSMAMAYI ŚŪLA <i>Sū.</i> <b>14</b> , 26, 47, 58; <i>Śā.</i> <b>8</b> , 34, 42; <i>M.</i> <b>12</b> , 20; <i>Ci.</i> <b>1/3</b> , 63, 5, 17, etc. <i>Syn.:</i> KALĀLOHARAJAS <i>Sū.</i> <b>21</b> , 23; <i>Ci.</i> <b>7</b> , 171 KRŚNĀYASA <i>Gr.</i> <b>1/2</b> , 49 KALĀYASARAJAS <i>Ci.</i> <b>1/1</b> , 58	Slab of stone Used for hot fomentation (covered with silk, cotton etc.)	Used for hot compress or fomentation	Hard cutaneous swellings, abscess, varicocle, etc.
9. AYAS <i>Ci.</i> <b>21</b> , 131	Iron	Used for hot compress or fomentation	Hard cutaneous swellings, varicocle
10. AYASA <i>Sū.</i> <b>4</b> , 131; <b>21</b> , 23; <i>Śā.</i> <b>8</b> , 34; <i>Ci.</i> <b>7</b> , Finely powdered iron or specially prepared iron <i>Syn.:</i> KALĀLOHARAJAS <i>Sū.</i> <b>21</b> , 23; <i>Ci.</i> <b>7</b> , 171 KRŚNĀYASA <i>Gr.</i> <b>1/2</b> , 49 KALĀYASARAJAS <i>Ci.</i> <b>1/1</b> , 58	(a) External—in dusting powder (b) External—ingredient of poultice (c) External—in ointment (d) External—in hair-lotion (e) Internal—used in prescription after prolonged contact with cow's urine (f) Internal—in linctus (g) Internal—in (acid) liquid mixture (h) Internal—in pills	(a) Cutaneous eruptions (b) Inflammation (c) Blindness, unseparated eyelids, tumours, piles (d) As hair-tonic and hair-dye (e) Leucoderma, jaundice, urinary disorders, anaemia, heart diseases, anal fistula, etc. (f) Toxicosis, asthma, cough, hiccup, etc. (g) Obesity, flatulence, debility, etc. (h) Disorders of chyme formation, spleen disorder, jaundice, anaemia, oedema, gastro-intestinal irritations, lithiasis, etc.	(a) Cutaneous eruptions (b) Inflammation (c) Blindness, unseparated eyelids, tumours, piles (d) As hair-tonic and hair-dye (e) Leucoderma, jaundice, urinary disorders, anaemia, heart diseases, anal fistula, etc. (f) Toxicosis, asthma, cough, hiccup, etc. (g) Obesity, flatulence, debility, etc. (h) Disorders of chyme formation, spleen disorder, jaundice, anaemia, oedema, gastro-intestinal irritations, lithiasis, etc.
11. AYOMALA <i>Ci.</i> <b>16</b> , 74 <i>Syn.:</i> MANDURA <i>Ci.</i> <b>16</b> , 95, 103	Iron rust	(a) Internal—in linctus (b) Internal—in prescription after prolonged treatment with cow's urine	(a) Toxic conditions with fever, spastic paraplegia, epilepsy, urinary disorders, skin diseases, etc. (b) Anaemia, dropsy, oedema, urinary disorders, jaundice, dysentery, intestinal parasites, etc.
12. BĀLUKA <i>Vi.</i> <b>8</b> , 141	Salt from saline sand	Ingredient of rectal enema	For relief in inflammatory conditions
13. BHRĀTALOṢTA <i>Ci.</i> <b>20</b> , 30 <i>Syn.:</i> PAKVALOṢTA <i>Ci.</i> <b>4</b> , 80; <b>22</b> , 42	Lump of baked clay	Medication of drinking water by prolonged immersion	Haemothermia, biliousness
14. DVE LAVĀNE <i>Ci.</i> <b>5</b> , 80; <b>26</b> , 12, 101	Rock-salt mixed with alkali salts	(a) Ingredient of rectal suppository (b) Internal—in powder mixture	(a) Acute constipation (b) Pain in gastric region or rectal area, piles, spleen disorders, pain after meals, throat spasms, etc.
15. DVE TUTTHE <i>Ci.</i> <b>7</b> , 108	The two vitriols	External—in medicated oil	Itching eczema, dermatosis

## CARAKA SAMHITA

TABLE 4  
*Medicinal Substances of Mineral Origin & their Uses—(Contd.)*

Name and reference	Modern equivalent	Mode of use or application	Medicinal uses in
16. GAIRIKA <i>Sū. 3; Gi. 3, 73; 25, 117; 26, 210, etc.</i>	Chalk of reddish-brown colour	(a) External—in ointment (b) External—in mud-pack (c) Ingredient of oral gargles (d) Internal—in liquid mixture (e) Internal—infusion in water	(a) White leprosy, depigmentation of the skin, ringworm, chancre, piles, etc. (b) Spreading skin infections (c) Halitosis, inflammation of mouth and throat, dental caries, diseases of the gum, etc. (d) Haemorrhia, bronchial asthma, bleeding nose, etc. (e) Blood dysentery, menstrual disorders, diseases of the uterus
17. GANDHAKA <i>Gi. 7, 71</i> <i>Syn.:</i> LELITAKA <i>Gi. 7, 70</i> SAUGANDHIKA <i>Sū. 3, 10; Gi. 17, 126</i>	Sulphur	(a) External—in dusting powder (b) Internal—in linctus (c) Internal—suspended in acid plant juices	(a) Ringworm, itches, herpes, scabies (b) Asthma, cough, hiccup (c) Chronic skin diseases
18. GARAMANI <i>Gi. 23, 252</i>	The 'poison' gem	External—to be kept in contact with the skin	As an antidote for poisoning
19. HEMAN <i>Vi. 8, 9</i> <i>Syn.:</i> SUVARNA <i>Sū. 1, 70; 5, 74</i> KANAKA <i>Sū. 3, 16; 8, 19, etc.</i> KANCANA <i>Gi. 1/4, 39</i>	Gold	(a) Material for catheters, enema tubes, tongue scrapers, etc. (b) Medication of drinking water by prolonged immersion (c) Internal—ingredient of medicated ghee	(a) Haemorrhia (b) As a vitalizing tonic and a panacea in all bodily ailments
20. ISTAKA-CORNIA <i>Gi. 27, 49</i>	Brick-powder	External—as powder for massage	Spastic paraplegia
21. KACA <i>Gi. 27, 125</i>	Glass or glass like mineral	Internal—powdered and used in linctus	Hiccup, cough, asthma
22. KALALAVANA <i>Sū. 27, 303; Vi. 8, 141;</i> <i>Sū. 8, 34; Gi. 13, 134</i> <i>Syn.:</i> KALOTTHALAVANA <i>Gi. 15, 171</i>	Black salt	(a) Internal—taken alone or dissolved in acid fruit juices (b) Internal—ingredient of medicated ghee	(a) As digestive, laxative and general tonic (b) Loss of appetite

23. KĀNCANAGAIRIKA Ci. 20, 32 Syn.: KAMŚRI Ci. 23, 54; 30, 121	Yellow ochre	(a) Internal—infusion with water (b) Internal—in pills	(a) Imbalance of the second and third humors (b) Fever, toxicosis
24. KĀMSYA Sū. 8, 9; Ci. 24, 154; Si. 3, 7 Syn.: RITI-KĀMSYA Sū. 3, 7	Bronze or bell-metal	Material for enema tubes, etc.	
25. KĀSISA Sū. 3, 5, 10; Ci. 7, 102 etc.; 21, 126, etc. Syn.: PAUŚPĀJANA Ci. 26, 250	Green vitriol (ferrous sulphate)	(a) External—in ointment (b) External—in eye-ointment (c) External—in dusting powder (d) External—ingredient of poultice (e) External—in medicated oil for local application	(a) Leucoderma, alopecia, fistula (b) Gradual loss of vision (c) Spreading inflammation, discoloured skin, skin diseases (d) Eye-diseases (e) Slimy discharges from the vagina, displaced or prolapsed uterus, painful and congested uterus
26. KRŚNAMR̄T Ci. 19, 82; 22, 44 Syn.: KRŚNAMR̄TTIKA Su. 27, 200; Ci. 19, 64	Black clay	Internal—in aqueous infusion	Excessive thirst, haemorrhage
27. KRŚNASIKATĀ Ci. 22, 44	Black sand	Medication of drinking water by prolonged immersion	Excessive thirst
28. LAVĀNĀNI CATVĀRI Ci. 15, 111	Mixture of four salts	(a) Internal—in pills (b) Internal—as ingredient of powder	(a) Spleen diseases, jaundice, loss of appetite, emaciation, etc. (b) Cough, asthma, heart diseases, etc.
29. LAVANA-PAṄCAKA Sū. 1, 75; Ci. 13, 127; 15, 106, etc.	Mixture of five salts	(a) Ingredient of rectal enema (b) External—as massaging powder (c) Internal—in medicinal powder (d) Internal—in pills (e) Internal—in medicated ghee (f) Internal—in liquid mixture	(a) Constipation (b) For inducing bleeding in poisonous bites (c) Spleen diseases, flatulence, indigestion, short breath, etc. (d) Coryza, heart-block (e) Cough, consumption, oedema, inguinal swelling, heart diseases, etc. (f) Dysentery; anaemia, gastrointestinal irritation, etc.
30. LAVANATRAYA Ci. 15, 177, 183; 20, 25; Si. 9, 18	Mixture of three salts	(a) Internal—in medicated ghee (b) Internal—in pills (c) Internal—in liquid mixture	(a) & (b) Colic pain, misperistalsis, piles, dysentery, etc. (c) Tetanus, convulsions, cardiac seizures

TABLE 4  
*Medicinal substances of Mineral Origin & their Uses—(Contd.)*

Name and reference	Modern equivalent	Mode of use or application	Medicinal uses in
31. LOHA Ci. 25, 103, etc.	Metal (iron)	Material for surgical instruments	
32. LOHTAMRT Gi. 23, 101	Red clay	Internal—in pills	Poisoning, oedema, indigestion, intestinal worms, etc.
33. MAKSIKA Gi. 7, 70; 16, 76, etc. Syn.: TAPYA Ci. 16, 78; 26, 250	Iron pyrites	(a) External—in eye-ointment (b) Internal—in pills, after prolonged immersion in cows' urine (c) Internal—in linctus	(a) Gradual loss of vision (b) Chronic skin diseases (c) Anaemia, irregular fever, urinary disorders, emaciation, toxicosis, jaundice, etc.
34. MANAHŚILA Śi. 1, 70; 3, 5; 5, 28, etc.; Śi. 7, 117; 17, 77, etc.	Realgar (arsenic sulphide)	(a) External—in dusting powder or in ointment (b) Ingredient of medicinal cigar (c) Internal—in linctus, pills or medicated ghee	(a) Chronic skin diseases, piles, leucoderma, baldness, alopecia, leprosy, exanthema, etc. (b) Migraine, hemicrania, ear-ache, diseases of the gum, drowsiness, etc. (c) Oedema, dysentery, toxicosis, night-blindness, carbuncle, etc.
35. MANI Śi. 1, 70; 6, 31; 8, 19; Ni. 7, 16; Precious stone Ci. 26, 250, etc.		External—in eye-salve, as fine powder	Eye-diseases, failing vision
Syn.: RATNA Śi. 8, 19, In. 1/2, 33			
36. MAULAKA Vi. 8, 141	Black salt	Ingredient of rectal enema	For rheumatic conditions
37. MRT Śi. 9, 13; 18, 6; Śi. 1, 43; Gi. 4, 79; 16, 121, etc.	Clay	(a) Internal—ingredient of mixture (b) Internal—in aqueous suspension	(a) Geophagism or abnormal hand-kering for clay (b) Haemothermia
38. O(A)UDBHIDA Śi. 1, 188; 27, 303; Vi. 8, 141; Ci. 15, 85; 26, 227	Fossil salt	(a) Ingredient of rectal enema (b) Internal—in medicated ghee (c) Internal—in emulsion with oil	(a) Constipation (b) Deafness, infected ear-passage, discharge of pus from ears, etc. (c) Intestinal worms
39. PAKYA Ci. 15, 85, 109	Artificially prepared salt	Internal—in medicated ghee	Indigestion, dysentery, etc.

TABLE 4: MINERAL SUBSTANCES

40. PANKA <i>Ci.</i> 22, 37; <i>Sū.</i> 18, 6 <i>Syn.:</i> PUŠKARINIMRT <i>Ci.</i> 4, 104	Slime	As mud-pack for application to the skin	Sunburn, high fever, etc.
41. PĀMSU <i>Ci.</i> 23, 38, 174	Powdered earth (clay)	External—for local application	Poisonous bites
42. PĀMŚUJA <i>Sū.</i> 27, 304; <i>Vi.</i> 8, 141	Salt prepared from saline clay	Internal—in mixtures	Loss of appetite, flatulence, rheumatism
43. RAJATA <i>Vi.</i> 8, 9, 11; <i>Ci.</i> 1/1, 58; 3, 23, etc. <i>Syn.:</i> RŪPYA <i>Sū.</i> 5, 74; <i>Ci.</i> 16, 78, etc.	Silver	(a) Material for fine tubes and catheters (b) Internal—in linctus as fine powder	(b) Asthma, cough, hiccup, emanation, loss of appetite, etc.
44. ROMAKA <i>Vi.</i> 8, 141; <i>Ci.</i> 15, 85 <i>Syn.:</i> VIDA <i>Sū.</i> 1, 88; 27, 302; <i>Sū.</i> 8, 34; <i>Ci.</i> 5, 69, 15, 85, etc.	Salt obtained from saline soils	(a) Ingredient of rectal enema (b) External—in medicated oil (c) Internal—in medicated ghee (d) Internal—in fermented mixture (e) Internal—in aqueous infusion (f) Internal—in powder mixtures dissolved in acid fruit juices (g) Internal—in dissolved in acid	(a) As a purgative in loss of appetite (b) Affections of the ear-passage and of hearing (c) & (d) Enlarged spleen, painful movement of bowels, mucus in stool, general weakness, etc. (e) Cough, asthma (f) Hard skin nodules, enlarged spleen, anaemia, dysentery, etc. (g) Chronic alcoholism.
45. RŪPYASILĀJATU <i>Ci.</i> 1/3, 58	Mineral bitumen from ores of silver	Internal—as powder	Imbalance of the first and third humors
46. SAMUDRA <i>Sū.</i> 1, 89; <i>Vi.</i> 8, 141 <i>Syn.:</i> SAMUDRAKA <i>Sū.</i> 27, 304	Sea-salt	(a) Ingredient of rectal enema (b) Internal—in powder mixtures	(a) Imbalance of the humors (as tranquillizer) (b) Indigestion, loss of appetite
47. SARVALOHA <i>Ci.</i> 1/3, 46	Tin, lead, iron, copper and silver	Internal—as finely-divided powders, boiled with myrobalan juice	As general tonic
48. SISAKA <i>Sū.</i> 3, 16; <i>Ci.</i> 7, 88; 17, 126	Lead	(a) Internal—in pills, after prolonged immersion of the powdered metal in cow's urine (b) Internal—in linctus as powder	(a) Cutaneous eruptions (b) Asthma, cough, hiccup
49. SAURAŚTRI <i>Ci.</i> 7, 114; 15, 138; 30, 79, 98	Alum	(a) External—in medicated oil (b) Internal—in linctus	(a) Intestinal worms, pruritus, leucorrhœa, erosion of the cervix, prolapsed uterus, etc. (b) Gastric disorders, enlarged spleen, colic pain, jaundice, anorexia, etc.

TABLE 4  
*Medicinal substances of Mineral Origin & their Uses—(Contd.)*

Name and reference	Modern equivalent	Mode of use or application	Medicinal uses in
50. SAUVARCALA <i>Sū. 1, 88; 20, etc.; Vi. 8, 14; Sa. 8, 34; Ci. 5, 69; 8, 142, etc.; Kā. 7, 59; Si. 7, 17, 9, 19, etc.</i>	Salt obtained by boiling alkali with myrobolans	(a) External—in various modes of application (b) Internal—in a large number of prescriptions	(a) & (b) Used in a large number of pathological conditions
51. SPHATIKA <i>Ci. 1/4, 22; 17, 125</i>	Quartz	(a) Internal—in linctus as fine powder (b) Internal—in medicated ghee	(a) Asthma, cough, hiccup (b) As a general tonic
52. SUVARNAMĀKṢIKA <i>Ci. 7, 71</i>	Pyrites ore	Internal—the powder after digestion with acid juices	A general remedy in all diseases
53. TAMRA <i>Ci. 21, 231</i>	Copper	Material for hot fomentation	Variocel, hard cutaneous swellings
54. TAMRARAJAS <i>Ci. 1/1, 58; 1/4, 22; 17, 126; 24, 246, etc.</i>	Finely divided copper	(a) External—in eye-ointment (b) Internal—in linctus (c) Internal—in mixture after digestion with plant juices	(a) Eye-diseases (b) Accumulation of waste matter in stomach, hiccup (c) General weakness and debility
55. TAMRASILĀJATU <i>Ci. 1/3, 58</i>	Mineral bitumen from ores of copper	Internal—as powder	As a vitalizing tonic
56. TIKSNAYASA <i>Ci. 1/3, 16</i>	Tempered iron or steel	Internal—in pills, after digestion of thin foils of the metal in acid juices	As a vitalizing tonic
57. TILAKSĀRA <i>Sū. 3, 14</i>	Alkaline ash from sesame seeds	External—in ointment	Ringworm, pruritus, papules on the skin-surface
58. TRAPU <i>Sū. 5, 74; Ci. 7, 88; Si. 3, 7</i>	Tin	(a) Material for enema tube, etc. (b) External—as ingredient of dusting powder	(a) Cutaneous eruptions (b) Cutaneous eruptions
59. UDBHIDA-SAINDHAVA <i>Sū. 1, 88; 27, 303; Vi. 8, 141; Ci. 15, 85; 26, 227</i>	Salt obtained from ashes of marine plants	(a) In rectal enema (b) Internal—in medicated ghee (c) Internal—in oil-emulsion	(a) Constipation, colic, pain, enlarged spleen, abdominal diseases, etc. (b) Diseases of the eye, mouth and ear

TABLE 4: MINERAL SUBSTANCES

85

60. VAIDURYA <i>Gr. 1/4, 22; 4, 79, etc.</i>	Beryl (cat's eye)	(a) External—in as powder (b) Internal—in linctus (c) Internal—in aqueous infusion	(a) Eye-ointment (b) Asthma, cough, hiccup (c) Haemothermia
61. VAJRA <i>Gr. 7, 22; 23, 252</i>	Diamond	Internal—finely powdered and mixed with plant juices	As a general remedy for all ailments
62. VALMIKA-MRTTIKĀ <i>Gr. 27, 49, 51, 54</i>	The deposit of white-ant hills	External—as massaging powder	Spastic paraplegia
63. VIŞAMÜŞİKA <i>Gr. 23, 253</i>	The "anti-poison" gem	External—to be worn in contact with the skin	Antidote for poisoning
64. VARATAKA <i>Gr. 26, 224</i>	Lime obtained by burning cowrie shells	Internal—as powder suspended in medicated oil	Ear-ache

TABLE 5  
*Cereals and Legumes*

**ŚŪKADHĀNYA-VARGĀ** (Cereals)

- (1) Varieties of rice:—  
Raktaśāli, Mahāśāli, Kalama, Śakunihrta, Tūrṇaka, Dirghaśūka, Gaura, Pānduka, Lāṅgula, Śāribhakhyā, Promodaka, Pataṅga, Tāpanīya, Yavaka, Havana, Pāñsu-vāpya, Naśadaka, Svastika, Gaurasvastika, Varaka, Uddālaka, Cina, Sāraḍa, Ujjvala, Dardura, Gandhana, Kuruvinda, Vṛihi and Pāṭala (Sū. 27, 6-13)
- (2) Varieties of millet:—  
Śyāmaka, Hasti-śyāmaka, Ambhas-śyāmaka, Nīvāra, Toyaparnī, Gavēdhuka, Prasāntika, Lauhitya, Aṇu, Priyaṅgu, Mukunda, Jhinīgarmuti, Varuka, Varaka, Śivira, Utkaṭa, and Jūrṇāhyā (Sū. 27, 16-18).
- (3) Other varieties of corns:—  
Yava (barley), Venuyava (bamboo-seeds), Godhūma (wheat), Nandimukhi and Madhuli (Sū. 27, 19-22)

**ŚAMIDHĀNYA-VARGĀ** (Legumes)

Mudga (green gram), Māṣa (black gram), Rājamāṣa (black-eye pea), Kulathā (horse-gram), Madhuṣṭaka (moth-gram), Caṇaka (chick-pea), Masura (lentil), Saharenava (common pea), Tila (sesame), Simbi, Ādaka (pigeon-pea), Saidagaja, Avalmuja, Kakanda (sword-bean), Umā (linseed), Ātmaguptā (cowage) (Sū. 27, 23-34)

TABLE 6  
*Natural Waters*  
**JALA-VARGA** Sū. 27, 197-216.

Name and reference	English translation
ANŪPA-JALA	Water of fresh-water lakes
BĀPI-JALA	Water of artificial tanks
HAIMA-JALA	Water from melting ice or snow
KŪPA-JALA	Well-water
NADYA-JALA	River water
PRASRAVANA-JALA	Water of surface springs and geysers
SAILA-JALA	Water of hill or mountain springs
SAROJALA	Water of ponds
ŚIŚIRA	Dew
TADĀGA-JALA	Water of artificial lakes
TOYADA-JALA	Rain water
TUṢĀRA	Snow
VARUṄĀLAYA-JALA	Sea water

**TABLE 7**  
*Sugar-cane Derivatives & Types of Honey*

Name and reference	English translation
<b>RASA-VARGA</b> , <i>Sū. 27</i> , 238-242	Sweet juices and their derivatives
AVAŚOṢITA-RASA	Sugar-cane juice boiled down to half, one-third, or one-fourth of its original bulk
DHAUTA-GUḌĀ	Clarified <i>guḍā</i>
GUDA	Dark-brown semi-crystallized crude sugar
IKṢU-RASA	Sugar-cane juice
KHANDA-ŚARKARĀ	Candied sugar
KṢUDRA-GUḌĀ	Dark-coloured treacle (or molasses)
MADHU-ŚARKARĀ	Crystallized honey
MATSYA-PINDAKA	Crude granulated sugar
PAUNDRAKA	Sugar-cane juice (clarified)
ŚARKARĀ	Crystallized cane sugar
VAMŚAKA	Unclarified sweet juice of the "Camel thorn" ( <i>Alhazī mauro-rum</i> )
YĀNTRIKA-RASA	Mechanically pressed cane-juice
<b>MADHU-VARGA</b> <i>Sū. 27</i> , 243	Honeys
BHRĀMARA	Honey of the <i>Apis dorsata</i>
KṢAUDRA	Dark-coloured honey from unspecified source
MĀKŚIKA	Bee honey
PAUTTIKA	Insect or wasp honey

TABLE 8  
*Milk and Milk-products*  
**PAYOVARGA** *Sū. 27, 217-236*

Name and reference	English translation
ĀVIKA-GHRTA	Clarified butter prepared from sheep's milk
ĀVIKA-PAYAS	Sheep's milk
CHĀGA-GHRTA	Clarified butter prepared from goat's milk
CHĀGA-PAYAS	Goat's milk
DADHI	Sour milk(curds or koumiss)
EKAŚAPHA-PAYAS	Milk from animals with uncloven hooves
GAVYA-GHRTA	Clarified butter from cow's milk
GAVYA-PAYAS	Cow's milk
GHRTA	Clarified butter from any source; or any preparation containing a major proportion of clarified butter
HASTINI-PAYAS	Elephant's milk
KILĀTA	Concentrated milk
MAHİŞI-GHRTA	Clarified butter from buffalo-milk
MAHİŞI-PAYAS	Buffalo's milk
MANDA	Casein
MANDAKA	Immature curds (partly souredmilk)
MĀNUṢA-PAYAS	Human milk
MORĀTA	Thickened milk
NAVANĪTA	Butter
SARA	Coagulum of milk
TAKRA	Dilute buttermilk
TAKRAPINDAKA	Coagulated (solid portion of) buttermilk
UŞTRI-PAYAS	Camel's milk

TABLE 9 : VEGETABLE OILS

89

**TABLE 9**  
*Vegetable Oils*  
**TAILA-VĀRGA** Sū. 27, 291-293

Name and reference	English translation
ATASYA-TAILA	Linseed oil
ERANDA-TAILA	Castor oil
KUSUMBHA-TAILA	Safflower oil
PRIYĀLA-TAILA	Oil of the <i>Buchanania Latifolia</i>
SARŚAPA-TAILA	Mustard oil
TILA-TAILA, Sū. 13, 12	Sesame ( <i>Sisamum indicum</i> ) oil

**TABLE 10**  
*Alcoholic Beverages*  
**MADYA-VARGA** Sū. 27, 179-193

Name and reference	English translation
ABHINAVA-MADYA	Freshly fermented liquor
ĀKṢIKI	Fermented liquor from the chebulic myrobolan
AMLAKĀŃJIKĀ, Ci. 5, 77 <i>Syn.:</i> <i>Kāñjika</i> <i>Dhānyāmla, Sū. 15, 7</i> <i>Tuśodaka</i>	Sour fermented liquor from rice gruel
ĀRAÑĀLA, Ci. 15, 116	Sour gruel from fermented boiled rice
ARIŞTA	Distilled wine for medicinal use
ĀSAVA	General name for distilled wine
ĀSUTA, Ci. 15, 121	Brewed mixture containing <i>Soma</i> plant juice
GAUDA	Rum prepared from crystallized brown sugar
JAGALA	Fermented liquor prepared from unboiled rice
MADHULIKA	Clear fermented liquor from <i>Mohua</i> fruits
MADHUSUKTA, Ci. 26, 227	Fermented liquor from a mixture of sugar-cane juice, dark-brown crude sugar and boiled rice; sweetened with honey
MADHVĀSAVA	Rum prepared from honey
MĀDHVIKA	Fermented liquor sweetened with honey
MADYA <i>Syn.:</i> <i>Surā</i>	Fermented liquor from barley, etc.
MADIRĀ <i>Syn.:</i> <i>Surāmānda</i> <i>Vāruṇimānda, Ci. 5, 92</i>	Distilled wine containing least amount of water (of high alcohol content)
MAIREYA	Mixed wine containing equal quantities of rum and fermented (undistilled) wine
MRDAUKA	Fermented liquor from grape juice
PAKVARASA <i>Syn.:</i> <i>Sidhu, Vi. 8, 140</i> <i>Prasannā, Ci. 26, 18</i>	Fermented liquor from mixture of thickened cane juice and dark-brown crude sugar
RASĀSAVA	Clear decanted layer of fermented liquors
ŚĀRKARA	Fermented liquor of sugar-cane juice
SAUVIRAKA	Fermented liquor from cane sugar solution
ŚITARASIKA	A type of fermented liquor
SUKTA, Ci. 29, 9	Fermented liquor from cold (unboiled) sugar-cane juice
SURĀSAVA	Fermented liquor from mixture of cold sugar-cane juice and boiled rice
TUŚAMBŪ	Wine distilled from fermented liquor
	Sour fermented liquor from barley gruel

**TABLE 11-A**  
*Anatomical Terms—General*

Name and reference	Modern name
1. ADHARAGUDA, <i>Śā.</i> 7, 10	Anus
2. AKṢI, <i>Śā.</i> 7, 11	Eye
3. AKṢIKANIKĀ, <i>Śā.</i> 7, 11	Pupils
4. AKṢIKŪTA, <i>Śā.</i> 7, 11	Eye-balls
5. AKṢIVARTMA, <i>Śā.</i> 7, 11	Eye-lids
6. ĀMĀŚAYA, <i>Śā.</i> 7, 10	Stomach
7. AMSA, <i>Vi.</i> 8, 117	Shoulder-blade
8. ĀNANA, <i>Vi.</i> 8, 117	Face
9. ĀNGULA, <i>Sū.</i> 26, 67	Finger
10. ANUŚASIRĀ, <i>Śā.</i> 7, 13 (29,956 in number)	Capillaries
11. ARATNI, <i>Vi.</i> 8, 107	Bones of the forearm
12. ASRKDHARA, <i>Śā.</i> 7, 4	Capillary
13. ĀSYA, <i>Vi.</i> 8, 117	Mouth
14. AVATTA, <i>Śā.</i> 7, 11	Base of the skull
15. BASTIŚIRŚA, <i>Vi.</i> 8, 117	Lower abdomen
16. BHAGA, <i>Vi.</i> 8, 117	Vagina
17. CIBUKA, <i>Vi.</i> 8, 107	Chin
18. DANTA, <i>Śā.</i> 7, 11	Tooth
19. DANTAVEŚṬAKA, <i>Śā.</i> 7, 11	Gums
20. DHAMANI, <i>Vi.</i> 5, 9 (200 in number)	Artery
21. GALAŚUNDI, <i>Śā.</i> 7, 11	Tonsils
22. GANDA, <i>Vi.</i> 8, 105	Cheek
23. GARBHĀŚAYA, <i>Śā.</i> 3, 3	Uterus
24. GOJIHVIKĀ, <i>Śā.</i> 7, 11	Tongue
25. GRĪVĀ, <i>Sū.</i> 20, 8	Front of the neck
26. GUDA, <i>Sū.</i> 27, 275	Rectal passage
27. GULPHA, <i>V.</i> 8, 107	Ankle
28. HANU, <i>Vi.</i> 8, 105	Jaw
29. HASTA, <i>Vi.</i> 8, 117	Hand
30. HRDAYA, <i>Sū.</i> 17, 3	Heart

TABLE 11-A  
*Anatomical Terms—General (contd.)*

Name and reference	Modern name
31. JAṄGHĀ, <i>Sū.</i> 16, 8	Calf
32. JANTRU, <i>Vi.</i> 8, 107	Collar-bone
33. JĀNU, <i>Vi.</i> 8, 107	Knee
34. JARĀYU, <i>Śā.</i> 3, 6	Womb
35. KAKṢA, <i>Vi.</i> 8, 105	Arm-pit
36. KANDARA, <i>Sū.</i> 11, 48	Sinew
37. KARṄAPATRAKA, <i>Śā.</i> 7, 11	Outer ear
38. KARṄAŚAṄKULIKA, <i>Śā.</i> 7, 11	Inner ear
39. KATI, <i>Vi.</i> 8, 117	Waist
40. KEŚA, <i>Sū.</i> 20, 11	Hair
41. KEŚABHŪMI, <i>Sū.</i> 20, 11	Scalp
42. KLOMAN, <i>Sū.</i> 17, 93	Broncho-pneumonial tract
43. KOŚTHĀṄGA, <i>Śā.</i> 7, 10	Alimentary canal
44. KRṄĀTIKĀ, <i>Vi.</i> 8, 105	Nape of neck
45. KṢUDRĀNTRA, <i>Śā.</i> 7, 10	Small intestines
46. KUKṢI, <i>Sū.</i> 17, 93	Abdomen
47. KUKUNDARA, <i>Śā.</i> 7, 11	Flanks
48. LALĀṬA, <i>Vi.</i> 8, 105	Forehead
49. LOMAN, <i>Vi.</i> 8, 106	Body-hair
50. LOMAKŪPA, <i>Śā.</i> 6, 23	Skin-pore
51. MĀMSA, <i>Sū.</i> 17, 82	Muscles (flesh)
52. MARMA, <i>Sū.</i> 11, 49 (107 in number)	Viscera; vital parts
53. MASTIŠKA, <i>Si.</i> 9, 80	Cranial matter (brain)
54. MEDAS, <i>Sū.</i> 16, 9	Adipose tissue
55. MEDHRA, <i>Sū.</i> 27, 275	Urethra
56. MŪRDHAN, <i>Sū.</i> 11, 48	Craniun (skull)
57. MŪTRĀŚAYA, <i>Vi.</i> 8, 117	Urinary bladder
58. NABHI, <i>Sū.</i> 17, 93	Navel
59. NĀSA, <i>Śā.</i> 8, 19	Nose
60. NĀSĀPUTA, <i>Śā.</i> 8, 19	Nostrils

**TABLE 11-A**  
*Anatomical Terms—General (contd.)*

Name and reference	Modern equivalent
61. NITAMBA, <i>Śā.</i> 7, 11.	Buttocks
62. OṢTHA, <i>Śā.</i> 7, 11	Lips
63. PĀDA, <i>Sū.</i> 26, 67	Feet
64. PĀDAHĀRDAYA, <i>Śā.</i> 7, 11	Soles of the feet
65. PĀDĀNGULA, <i>Sū.</i> 26, 67	Toes
66. PAKVĀŚAYA, <i>Sū.</i> 2, 10	Colon
67. PĀNIHRDAYA, <i>Śā.</i> 7, 11	Palms of the hands
68. PĀRŚNYA, <i>Vi.</i> 8, 107	Heel
69. PARVAN, <i>Sū.</i> 26, 8	Joints
70. PIṄDIKA, <i>Śā.</i> 7, 11 ( <i>Pesi</i> — <i>Śā.</i> 7, 14) :—400 in number	Muscles
71. PLIHĀ, <i>Sū.</i> 17, 93	Spleen
72. PRAPĀÑI, <i>Vi.</i> 8, 117	Forearm
73. PRAVĀHA, <i>Vi.</i> 8, 117	Upper arm
74. PRŪTHA, <i>Vi.</i> 8, 117	Back
75. PURIŚADHĀRA, <i>Śā.</i> 7, 10	Pelvic colon
76. RASĀYANYA, <i>Vi.</i> 5, 8	Capillaries
77. SAKTHI, <i>Sū.</i> 20, 8	Thigh-bone
78. SAMVRṬĀSAMVRFTA, <i>Vi.</i> 5, 8	Body channel closed at one end
79. SANDHI, <i>Śā.</i> 7, 14 (200 in number)	Joint
80. ŚANKHYA, <i>Vi.</i> 8, 105	Temples
81. ŚARIRACCHIDRA, <i>Vi.</i> 5, 8	Body orifice
82. ŠEFA, <i>Vi.</i> 8, 117	Penis
83. ŠIRAS, <i>Sū.</i> 17, 3	Head
84. SIRĀ, <i>Vi.</i> 5, 9 (700 in number)	Vein
85. ŠLEŚMABHAVA <i>Śā.</i> 7, 11	Lungs
86. SKANDHA, <i>Sū.</i> 27, 334	Shoulder
87. SNAYU, <i>Sū.</i> 11, 48 (900 in number)	Tendon; nerve
88. SPHIK, <i>Sū.</i> 21, 15	Hip
89. ŠRONI, <i>Sū.</i> 27, 275	Pelvis
90. STANA, <i>Vi.</i> 8, 117	Breast

**TABLE 11-A**  
*Anatomical Terms—General (contd.)*

Name and reference	Modern name
91. STANAMANDALA, <i>Śā.</i> 4, 16	Areoles
92. STHŪLĀNTRA, <i>Śā.</i> 7, 10	Large intestines
93. ŚUKRĀŚAYA, <i>Śā.</i> 2, 19	Seminal vessel
94. SVĀNI, <i>Śā.</i> 7, 42	Bodily orifice
95. SVEDAMUKHA, <i>Sū.</i> 7, 42	Openings of sweat-glands
96. TĀLU <i>Śā.</i> 7, 11	Palate
97. TAMAKA, <i>Ci.</i> 17, 62	Bronchial tract
98. TRĀKA, <i>Vi.</i> 8, 117	Sacrum
99. UDAGDHARA, <i>Śā.</i> 7, 4	Epidermis
100. UKHA, <i>Śā.</i> 7, 11	Axilla
101. UPAJIHVIKĀ, <i>Śā.</i> 7, 11	Uvula
102. ŪRU, <i>Sū.</i> 16, 8	Thigh
103. UTSEDHA, <i>Vi.</i> 8, 117	Neck
104. UTTARAGUDA, <i>Śā.</i> 7, 10	Upper part of the rectal passage
105. VANKṢANA, <i>Sū.</i> 14, 10	Groin
106. VAPAVAHANA, <i>Śā.</i> 7, 10	Omentum
107. VRĀKA, <i>Sū.</i> 17, 93	Kidney
108. VRṢANA, <i>Sū.</i> 14, 10	Testicles
109. YAKRT <i>Sū.</i> 17, 93	Liver

**TABLE 11-B**  
**Bones in the Human Body**

In the *Caraka Samhitā* the total number of *asthi* (a general term used by Cāraka for bones, teeth, nails, hard cartilages and bone-sockets) in the human body is said to be 360, which include (*Sā. 7, 6*):

Name	Number	Modern equivalent
1. AKṢAKA	2	Collar-bones
2. AMSA	2	Cannot be identified with any modern description
3. AMSA-PHALAKA	2	Scapula or shoulder-blades
4. ARATNI	4	Radius and ulna of the forearm
5. BĀHUNALAKA	2	Bones of the upper arms
6. BHAGĀSTHI	1	Pubic bone or the sacrum-cum-coccyx
7. DANTA	32	Teeth
8. DANTOLŪKHALA	32	Sockets of the teeth
9. GRIVĀSTHI	15	Bones in the column of neck
10. GULPHA	4	Ankle bones or malleoli
11. HANVASTHI	1	Lower jaw-bone
12. HANUMŪLABANDHANA	2	Attachment or binding-bones of the lower jaw
13. HASTA-MANIKA	2	Bones of the wrists
14. JAṄGHĀ	4	Tibia and fibula of the legs
15. JĀNU	2	Knee-caps
16. JATRU	1	Cartilage of the wind-pipe
17. KAPĀLAKA	2	Elbow-pans
18. NAKHA	20	Nails
19. NĀSIKĀ-GANDĀ-KŪTA-LALĀṭA	1	Two nasal, two molar and two superciliary ridges of the eye-brows
20. PĀNIPĀDĀṄGULYASTHI	60	Digital bones or phalanges of the toes and fingers (56 only)
21. PĀNIPĀDAŚALĀKĀ	20	Metacarpal and metatarsal bones
22. PĀNIPĀDAŚALĀKĀDHIS-THĀNA	4	Bases of the metacarpal and metatarsal bones
23. PĀRŚNYASTHI	2	Heel-bones
24. PARŚUKĀ	24	Ribs
25. PRŪTHAGATĀSTHI	45	Backbone or the vertebral column
26. ŚANKHYA	2	Temple-bones
27. ŚIRĀṄKAPĀLA	4	Cranial bones

TABLE 11-B  
*Bones in the Human Body (contd.)*

Name	Number	Modern equivalent
28. ŠRONIPHALAKA	2	Pelvic bones ( <i>os innominatum</i> )
29. STHĀLAKA	24	Sockets of the ribs
30. STHĀLAKĀRBUDA	24	Tubercles of the ribs
31. TĀLUKA	2	Hard palate
32. URASASTHI	14	Breast-bones
33. ŪRUNALAKA	2	Thigh-bones

The total number of bones in the human body, as given in modern anatomy, is 206 only.

TABLE 12  
*Physiological Terms*

Name and reference	Modern name
1. ĀMAGARBHA, <i>Sū.</i> 6, 10	Embryo (egg)
2. ANTRAPĀKA, <i>Ci.</i> 15, 38	Digestive process
3. ANURASA, <i>Sū.</i> 26, 28	Latent taste
4. APARĀ, <i>Śā.</i> 6, 23	Placenta
5. APICCHADA, <i>Sū.</i> 28, 4	Serum
6. ĀRTAVA, <i>Śā.</i> 3, 3	Ovum
7. AŚRU, <i>Ci.</i> 26, 23	Lachrymal fluid
8. BĪJAGRAHAṄA, <i>Śā.</i> 2, 23	Fertilization of the ovum
9. DHĀTU, <i>Sū.</i> 7, 49	Major constituents of the human body
10. DR̥STI, <i>Sū.</i> 8, 8	Vision
11. GARBHA, <i>Sū.</i> 7, 39	Conception
12. GHRĀṄA, <i>Sū.</i> 8, 8	Sense of smell
13. HR̥DAYASPANDANA, <i>Ci.</i> 16, 12	Heart-beat
14. KAPHA, <i>Sū.</i> 16, 9	Phlegm or secretion of mucus
15. KITṬA, <i>Sū.</i> 28, 3	Secretion or bodily waste products
16. LASI, <i>Sū.</i> 28, 8	Lymphatic fluid
17. MAJJĀ, <i>Sū.</i> 13, 17	Bone-marrow
18. MALA, <i>Sū.</i> 7, 42	Excretions of the body
19. MASTIṄKA or MASTULĀṄGA, <i>Sū.</i> 9, 81, 90	Brain-matter
20. MŪTRA, <i>Sū.</i> 14, 4	Urine
21. NĀBHIṄĀDI, <i>Śā.</i> 6, 23	Umbilical cord
22. OJAS, <i>Sū.</i> 17, 75	Vital essence
23. PARIṄĀMĀPADYA, <i>Vi.</i> 5, 6	Metabolic process
24. PITTA, <i>Sū.</i> 3, 6	Bile
25. PRĀṄA, <i>Vi.</i> 5, 6	Life-breath
26. PURIṄA, <i>Sū.</i> 14, 4	Faeces
27. RAJAS, <i>Sū.</i> 25, 40	Menstrual flow
28. RASA, <i>Sū.</i> 17, 64	Nutrient body-fluid
29. RAKTA, <i>Sū.</i> 11, 48	Blood
30. RASĀṄA, <i>Sū.</i> 8, 8	Sense of taste

TABLE 12  
*Physiological Terms (contd.)*

Name and reference	Modern name
31. RUDHIRASROTAS, <i>Vi.</i> 5, 6	Blood-flow
32. SAMKOCA, <i>Sū.</i> 7, 18	Muscular contraction
33. SPARŚA, <i>Sū.</i> 8, 8	Sense of touch
34. SROTAS, <i>Vi.</i> 5, 8	Movement of fluids through channels in the human body
35. ŠRÓTRA, <i>Sū.</i> 8, 8	Sense of hearing
37. ŠUKRA, <i>Vi.</i> 5, 6	Semen
37. SVEDA, <i>Vi.</i> 5, 6	Sweat
38. SVEDĀGAMA, <i>Sū.</i> 7, 15	Perspiration
39. UDGĀRA, <i>Sū.</i> 7, 33	Eructation
40. UDRANA, <i>Sū.</i> 4, 16	Erection
41. UPADEHA, <i>Ci.</i> 26, 23	Mucus cells
42. VÍRYA, <i>Sū.</i> 26, 66	Potency

TABLE 13 : DISEASES

99

TABLE 13  
*Diseases*

Name and reference	Modern name
1. ADHIJHVĀ, <i>Ci.</i> 12, 77	Abscess under the tongue
2. AGNIMĀNDYA, <i>Sū.</i> 20, 17	Dyspepsia
3. AJĀTODAKA, <i>Ci.</i> 13, 58	Dehydration of the stomach
4. AKṢIBHEDA, <i>Sū.</i> 20, 1	Squint eye
5. AKṢIPĀKA, <i>Sū.</i> 20, 14	Ophthalmitis
6. AKSIROGA, <i>Ci.</i> 26, 130 (Ninety-six varieties mentioned, but neither named nor described)	Eye-affection
7. ĀLAJI, <i>Ci.</i> 12, 88	Whitlow
8. ĀMADOŞA, <i>Vi.</i> 2, 10	Disorders of chyme formation
9. AMLAPITTA, <i>Ci.</i> 15, 47	Acid dyspepsia
10. ĀNĀHA, <i>Ci.</i> 28, 29	Acute constipation
11. ANIDRĀ, <i>Ci.</i> 28, 21	Insomnia
12. ANTARĀYĀMA, <i>Ci.</i> 28, 43	Stiff neck
13. ANTRĀPĀNAVIDĀHA, <i>Sū.</i> 24, 14	Intestinal inflammation
14. ANTRAVRDDHI, <i>Ci.</i> 12, 94	Hernia
15. APASMĀRA, <i>Ci.</i> 10, 3 (Five types described according to etiology)	Epilepsy
16. APATASTRAKA, <i>Si.</i> 9, 12	Convulsions with body bent like a bow (Tetanus)
17. ARDHĀVABHEDA, <i>Si.</i> 9, 74	Hemicrania
18. ARBUDA, <i>Ci.</i> 12, 87	Non-suppurating swelling
19. ARDITA, <i>Sū.</i> 20, 11	Facial paralysis
20. AROCĀKA, <i>Ci.</i> 26, 124 (Six types described according to etiology)	Anorexia
21. ARŚA, <i>Ci.</i> 14, 7 (Seven types described according to etiology)	Haemorrhoids
22. AŚMARI, <i>Ci.</i> 26, 36 (Two types according to etiology)	Urinary calculus
23. ASTHIKṢAYA, <i>Sū.</i> 17, 67	Atrophy of bones
24. ĀSYAVIPĀKA, <i>Sū.</i> 20, 14	Stomatitis
25. ATAKTYĀBHINIVEŚA, <i>Ci.</i> 10, 52	Psychic epilepsy
26. ATISĀRA, <i>Ci.</i> 19, 4 (a) ĀMATISĀRA, <i>Ci.</i> 19, 5	Dysentery Dysentery with mucus discharge

TABLE 13  
*Diseases (contd.)*

Name and reference	Modern name
(b) RAKTATISARA, Ci. 19, 70 (Six other types described according to etiology)	Dysentery with blood discharge
27. ATISTHULA, Sū. 21, 4	Excessive obesity
28. BHAGANDARA, Ci. 12, 96	Anal fistula
29. CYUTASANDHI, Ci. 25, 68	Dislocation
30. DANTABHEDA, Sū. 20, 11	Dental schism
31. DANTAMAMSA VIDRADHI, Ci. 12, 78	Gum-boil
32. DANTAŚAITHILYA, Sū. 20, 11	Loose teeth
33. DHAMANIPRATICAYA, Sū. 20, 177	Dilatation of blood vessels
34. DHANUŠTAMBHA, Sū. 20, 14	Tetanus
35. DURMA, Sū. 17, 73	Neurasthenia
36. EKĀNGAROGA, Sū. 20, 11	Monoplegia
37. GALAGANDA, Ci. 12, 79	Tumour on the side of the neck
38. GALAGRAHA, Sū. 18, 22	Acute swelling inside throat
39. GALAPAKA, Sū. 20, 14	Suppurated inflammation in the throat
40. GALAŠUNDIKĀ, Sū. 18, 20	Tonsilitis
41. GARBHINIROGA, Sā. 8, 26	Diseases of pregnancy
42. GRAHANIDOŠA, Ci. 15, 51 (Four types described according to etiology).	Diarrhoea
43. GRANTHI, Ci. 12, 81	Glandular swelling; varicocele
44. GRDHRASI, Sū. 20, 11	Sciatica
45. GUDABHRAMSHA, Sū. 20, 11	Prolapsed anus
46. GUDAPAKA, Sū. 20, 14	Proctitis of the anus
47. GULMA, Ci. 5, 48 (Six types described according to etiology)	Hardening and swelling of the spleen
48. HRDDRAVA, Sū. 20, 11	Tachycardia
49. HRDROGA, Sū. 17, 6 (Five types mentioned, but not described)	Heart disease
50. HRNMOHA, Sū. 20, 11	Cardiac irregularity or heart-block
51. IKŠUVĀLIKARASAMEHA, Ni. 4, 10	Glycosuria
52. JĀLAKAGARDABHA, Ci. 12, 99	Fever, due to suppuration
53. JĀNUBHEDA, Sū. 20, 11	Bow legs

**TABLE 13**  
*Diseases (contd.)*

Name and reference	Modern name
54. JĀNUVIŠLEŠA, <i>Sū. 20</i> , 11	Knock-knees
55. JATHARAGNIVIKĀRA, <i>Vi. 6</i> , 12 (Four types named and described according to symptoms)	Morbid appetite
56. JVĀRA, <i>Ci.</i> chapter 3 (Eight types described according to etiology, which includes <i>sannipāta</i> (typhoid). <i>Sū. 17</i> , 41)	Fever
57. KAKṢĀ, <i>Sū. 20</i> , 14	Herpes
58. KANDŪ, <i>Ci. 29</i> , 17	Pruritus
59. KARṄAROGA, <i>Ci. 26</i> , 127  (a) BĀDHIRYA, <i>Ci. 26</i> , 128  (b) KARṄASOPHA, <i>Ci. 29</i> , 127  (c) KARṄASRĀVA, <i>Ci. 26</i> , 127  (d) PŪTISRĀVĀNA, <i>Ci. 26</i> , 127 (Also eight other types according to symptoms)	Deafness Inflammatory swelling inside ear Pus discharge from the ear Suppuration of the inner the ear
60. KĀSA, <i>Ci.</i> chapter 18 (Five varieties described according to etiology)	Chronic cough
61. KEŚABHŪMISPHUTANAM, <i>Sū. 20</i> , 11	Fissures of the scalp
62. KHĀLITVA, <i>Sū. 5</i> , 30	Baldness
63. KHAṄJATVA, <i>Sū. 20</i> , 11	Lameness
64. KLAIBYA, <i>Ci. 30</i> , 154 (Four types described according to etiology)	Impotency of the male
65. KOTĀ, <i>Sū. 24</i> , 16	Localized thickening of muscle-fibres
66. KRMI, <i>Sū. 19</i> , 9  (Nineteen types according to nature of the parasites)	Parasitic infections
67. KSĪRA-DOŞĀ, <i>Ci. 30</i> , 237 (Eleven types according to etiology and symptoms)	Disorder of lactation
68. KUBJATVA, <i>Sū. 20</i> , 11	Hunch-back condition
69. KUŞTHA, <i>Ci.</i> chapter 7  (a) ALASAKA, <i>Ci. 7</i> , 23  (b) CARMADALA, <i>Ci. 7</i> , 24  (c) CARMAKUŞTHA, <i>Ci. 7</i> , 21  (d) EKAKUŞTHA, <i>Ci. 7</i> , 21  (e) DADRU, <i>Ci. 7</i> , 23	Chronic skin diseases Itching red papules Easily-bursting, itching eruptions Extensive eczema with thickened dermis Localized eczema Ringworm

TABLE 13  
*Diseases (contd.)*

Name and reference	Modern name
(f) KĀKANA, Ci. 7, 20	Malignant growths
(g) KAPĀLA, Ci. 7, 14	Erythema
(h) KILĀSA, Ci. 7, 173	Fresh leprous lesions
(i) KITIMA, Ci. 7, 22	Hard, rough and discoloured dermatosis
(j) MANDALA, Ci. 7, 16	Urticular dermatosis
(k) PĀMĀ, Ci. 7, 25	Mild leprosy
(l) PUNDARIKA, Ci. 7, 18	Ulcerated dermatosis
(m) RSYAJIHVAKA, Ci. 7, 18	Suppurated dermatosis
(n) ŠATARU, Ci. 7, 26	Leprous sores; gangrene
(o) SIDHMA, Ci. 7, 19	Psoriasis
(p) ŠVITRA, Ci. 7, 173	Patchy dermatosis
(q) UDUMBARA, Ci. 7, 15	Acute, non-healing sores
(r) VICARCIKĀ, Ci. 7, 26	Scabies
(s) VIPĀDIKĀ, Ci. 7, 22	Dermatosis with fissures in the extremities
(t) VIŠPHOTAKA, Ci. 7, 25	Boils
70. LALĀTABHEDA, Sz. 20, 11	Frontal headache
71. LINGAPĀKA, Ci. 30, 168	Suppuration and sores of the penis
72. MADĀTYAYA, Ci. chapter 24 (Six types described according to symptoms)	Chronic alcoholism
73. MADHUMEHA, Ni. 4, 44; Ci. 6, 55-56	Diabetes (described as incurable)
74. MAMSAKLEDA, Sz. 20, 14	Softening and degeneration of muscular tissues
75. MANOVIKĀRA, Sz. 7, 52	Psychic disorders
76. MASŪRIKĀ, Ci. 12, 93	Pox
77. MEDHRAPĀKA, Sz. 20, 14	Urethritis
78. MRTAGARBHA, Sz. 8, 90	Chronic abortion
79. MŪKATVA, Sz. 20, 11	Dumbness
80. MUKHAROGA, Ci. 26, 119	Oral diseases
81. MŪRCCHĀ, Sz. 24, 35 (Five types described according to etiology)	Fainting fits
82. MŪTRAJATHARA, Si. 9, 30	Retention of urine causing distension of the lower abdomen

TABLE 13 : DISEASES

103

TABLE 13  
*Diseases (contd.)*

Name and reference	Modern name
83. MŪTRAKRCCHRA, Ci. 26, 32 (Eight types described according to etiology)	Dysuria
84. MŪTRAKṢAYA, Si. 9, 34	Uraemia
85. MŪTRĀTĪTA, Si. 9, 35	Chronic difficulty and delay in micturition
86. MŪTROTSĀNGA, Si. 9, 34	Blood discharge with urine
87. NĀDIVRANA, Ci. 25, 56	Sinus of fistula
88. NĀDIROGA, Śā. 8, 45 (Four types named, but not described)	Diseases of new-born babies
89. NĀSĀROGA, Ci. chapetr 26	Diseases of the nasal passage
(a) DUṢTAPRATIŚAYA, Ci. 26, 110	Pernicious rhinitis
(b) GHRĀṄAPĀKA, Ci. 26, 115	Anosmia
(c) NĀSĀRŚAS, Ci. 14, 6	Polypus in nose
(d) NĀSĀRBUDA, Ci. 26, 116	Tumour in nose
(e) NĀSĀSRĀVA, Ci. 26, 112	Catarrh
(f) NĀSĀŚRĀNGĀṬAKA, Ci. 26, 111	Atrophy of the sense of smell
(g) PINĀSA, Ci. 26, 114	Acute rhinitis
(h) PRATINĀHA, Ci. 26, 112	Obstruction in the nasal passage
(i) PŪYARAKTA, Ci. 26, 116 (Also eleven other minor variations)	Suppuration inside nose
90. NIDRĀDHIKYA, Sū. 20, 17	Hypersomnia
91. OŚA, Sū. 20, 14	Heat-stroke
92. OŚTHABHEDA, Sū. 20, 11	Hare-lips
93. PĀDABHRAMŚA, Sū. 20, 11	Fallen arch or flat-foot
94. PAKṢAVADHA, Sū. 20, 11	Hemiplegia
95. PĀNDUROGA, Ci. 16, 7	Jaundice
(a) HALIMAKA, Ci. 16, 132	Jaundice due to anaemia
(b) KĀMALĀ, Ci. 16, 34 (Three types described according to etiology)	Jaundice due to intestinal disorders
(c) KUMBHAKĀMALĀ, Ci. 26, 36	Malignant jaundice
96. PĀNGULYA, Sū. 20, 11	Deformed foot; club-foot
97. PĀRŚAVIMARDA, Sū. 20, 11	Painful spasms in chest with breathing difficulty

TABLE 13  
*Diseases (contd.)*

Name and reference	Modern name
98. PĪDAKA, <i>Sū.</i> 17, 82	Diabetic eruptions
(a) ALAJĪ, <i>Ci.</i> 17, 88	Dry gangrene
(b) JĀLINĪ, <i>Ci.</i> 17, 86	Carbuncle with multiple openings
(c) KACCHAPIKĀ, <i>Sū.</i> 17, 85	Carbuncle with single opening
(d) ŠĀRIVAKA, <i>Sū.</i> 17, 84	Circular ulcers
(e) SARŞAPI, <i>Sū.</i> 17, 87	Large boil, surrounded by small secondary pustules
(f) VIDRADHI, <i>Sū.</i> 17, 10	Abscesses of the inner organs
(g) VINATĀ, <i>Sū.</i> 17, 89	Moist gangrene
99. PLIHĀROGA, <i>Sū.</i> 19, 4 (Five types described according to etiology)	Splenic diseases
100. PRAMEHA, <i>Ni.</i> 4, 8 (Twenty variations including diabetes, described according to symptoms)	Urinary disorders
101. PŪTIGHRĀNATĀ, <i>Sū.</i> 14, 11	Halitosis
102. RĀJAYAKŞMĀ, <i>Ci.</i> 8, 14	Pulmonary consumption
103. RAKTAGRANTHI, <i>Si.</i> 9, 41	Tumour in the neck of the bladder
104. RAKTAPITTA, <i>Ci.</i> 4, 11 (Seven types described according to etiology)	Haemothermia
105. RETODOŞA, <i>Ci.</i> 30, 139 (Eight types described according to symptoms)	Seminal disorders
106. ROHINI, <i>Sū.</i> 18, 34	Extensive and painful swelling at the base of the tongue
107. ROMĀNTIKĀ, <i>Ci.</i> 12, 92	Small eruptions spread over the entire skin surface
108. ŠĀLUKA, <i>Ci.</i> 12, 75	Frightful swelling and inflammation inside throat with stertorus breathing
109. SĀNKHYABHEDA, <i>Sū.</i> 20, 11	Migraine
110. SARVĀNGAROGA, <i>Ci.</i> 28, 29	General paralysis
111. ŠIROROGA, <i>Sū.</i> 17, 6 (Five types mentioned, but not described)	Diseases of the head
112. ŠIRAHŞOPHA, <i>Ci.</i> 12, 75	Erysipelas of the head
113. SIRĀSTAMBHA, <i>Ci.</i> 25, 29	Vascular thrombosis
114. ŠLIPADA, <i>Ci.</i> 12, 98	Elephantitis of the leg
115. ŠONITAKLEDA, <i>Sū.</i> 20, 14	Pernicious anaemia

TABLE 13 : DISEASES

105

**TABLE I3**  
*Diseases (contd.)*

Name and reference	Modern name
116. ŠOSA, <i>Ni.</i> 6, 11	Wasting diseases
117. ŠOTHA, <i>Ni.</i> 12, 1	Oedema
118. SROTOROGA, <i>Vi.</i> 5, 8 (Fourteen types named and described according to location)	Diseases of the body fluids and channels
119. SŪRYĀVARTA, <i>Si.</i> 9, 79	Recurrent neuralgic pain in the head
120. SVARAKŞAYA, <i>Sū.</i> 24, 15	Aphonia
121. ŠVĀSA, <i>Ci.</i> 17, 46 (Five types described according to symptoms)	Asthma
122. ŠVETAMŪTRAVARCASTVA, <i>Sū.</i> 20, 17	White and flocculent urine
123. TĀLUVIDRADHI, <i>Ci.</i> 12, 77	Abscess of the palate
124. TAMASU, <i>Sū.</i> 20, 11	Asthenia
125. TAMO'TIDARŚANA, <i>Sū.</i> 24, 15	Repeated fainting fits
126. TIMIRA, <i>Sū.</i> 20, 11	Partial loss of vision
127. TRSNĀ, <i>Ci.</i> 22, 57 (Five types described according to etiology)	Morbid thirst
128. TVAGAVADĀRANA, <i>Sū.</i> 20, 14	Scaly skin
129. UDARAROGA, <i>Ci.</i> 13, 9 (a) CHIDRODARA, <i>Ci.</i> 13, 42	Stomach troubles
	Perforation of the stomach or intestinal wall
(b) JALODARA, <i>Ci.</i> 13, 45	Distension of the abdomen due to fluid secretion
(c) UDARĀVEŠTA, <i>Sū.</i> 20, 11	Cardiac pain originating in stomach
(d) UDĀVARTA, <i>Ci.</i> 26, 6	Paralysis of the intestines
(e) BADDHAGUDODARA, <i>Ci.</i> 13, 39	Peritonitis
130. UDARDA, <i>Sū.</i> 20, 17	Urticaria
131. UNAPADĀNKUŠANIYAKAVIKĀRA, <i>Vi.</i> 3, 4	Epidemic diseases
132. UNMĀDA, <i>Ci.</i> chapter 9 (Fifteen types described, five according to etiology and the others according to symptoms)	Insanity
133. UPAJIHVIKĀ, <i>Ci.</i> 12, 77	Acute glossitis
134. UPAKUŠA, <i>Ci.</i> 12, 78	Gingivitis
135. ĪRUSĀDA, <i>Sū.</i> 20, 11	Atrophy of the thigh muscles
136. ĪRUSTAMBHA, <i>Ci.</i> chapter 27	Paralysis of the thighs

TABLE 13  
Diseases (*contd.*)

Name and reference	Modern name
137. UTSANTRA, <i>Ci.</i> 25, 58	Displacement of internal organs
138. VĀTABALĀSA, <i>Ci.</i> 29, 11 (Three types named)	Rheumatism of the joints
139. VĀTAŠTILĀ, <i>Si.</i> 9, 36	Hard tumour in the rectal or urinary passage
140. VIDĀLIKĀ, <i>Ci.</i> 12, 76	Angina or quinsy
141. VIDARIKĀ, <i>Ci.</i> 12, 89	Bubo in the groins
142. VILOMA, <i>Ci.</i> 25, 118	Alopecia
143. VISAMAJVARA, <i>Ci.</i> 3, 53 (Six types described according to periodicity)	Recurrent fevers
144. VISARPA, <i>Ci.</i> 21, 29 (Seven types described according to etiology)	Acute spreading suppurations
145. VISŪCIKĀ, <i>Vi.</i> 2, 10	Choleraic diarrhoea
146. VRADHNA, <i>Ci.</i> 12, 94 (Five types described according to etiology)	Permanent swellings
147. VRANA, <i>Ci.</i> chapter 25 (Forty-four types mentioned, but not all described, including <i>nāḍivrana</i> )	Wounds; sores
148. VRĀSANAKŠEPA, <i>Sū.</i> 20, 11	Crypto-orchitis
149. *YONI-ROGA, <i>Ci.</i> chapter 30	Diseases of the reproductive organs
(a) ACARAṄĀ, <i>Ci.</i> 30, 18	Itching growth in the vagina
(b) ANTARMUKHI, <i>Ci.</i> 30, 29	Inverted uterus
(c) ARAJASKA, <i>Ci.</i> 30, 17	Scanty menstrual flow or amenorrhoea
(d) ATICARANAṄĀ, <i>Ci.</i> 30, 19	Chronic vaginitis
(e) KARṄINI, <i>Ci.</i> 30, 27	Inflammation of the cervix
(f) MAHĀYONI, <i>Ci.</i> 30, 35	Prolapsed uterus
(g) PARIPLUTA, <i>Ci.</i> 30, 23	Acute vaginitis
(h) PRADARA, <i>Ci.</i> 30, 205 (Four types described according to etiology and symptoms)	Menstrual disorders
(i) PRĀKCARANAṄĀ, <i>Ci.</i> 30, 20	Deflorative vaginitis
(j) PUTRAGHNI, <i>Ci.</i> 30, 28	Chronic abortion
(k) RAKTAYONI, <i>Ci.</i> 30, 16	Menorrhagia

\* This term in *Caraka* also includes seminal disorders and impotency in the male, as also diseases of lactation. But these have been mentioned in the present list in their proper order.

TABLE 13  
*Diseases (contd.)*

Name and reference	Modern name
(l) UDĀVARTINI, Ci. 30, 25	Dysmenorrhoea
(m) UPAPLUTA, Ci. 30, 21	Leucorrhoea
(n) VĀMINI, Ci. 30, 32	Flow of old deposited semen

TABLE 14  
*Pathological Conditions and Congenital Defects*

Name and reference	Modern name
1. ABHIGHĀTA, <i>Si.</i> 9, 6 (Three types mentioned)	Accidental injuries
2. AJĪRNA, <i>Ci.</i> 15, 42	Indigestion
3. AKṢIŚŪLA, <i>Sū.</i> 20, 11	Eye-ache
4. ĀLĀLAMEHA, <i>Ni.</i> 4, 10	Discharge of pus with urine
5. ĀLASYA, <i>Sū.</i> 20, 17	Lassitude
6. ĀMAPITTA, <i>Ci.</i> 22, 15	Biliousness
7. AMLAKĀ, <i>Sū.</i> 20, 14	Hyperacidity of stomach
8. AMSADĀHA, <i>Sū.</i> 20, 14	Local burning sensation
9. ĀNGAGANDHA, <i>Sū.</i> 20, 14	Body odour
10. ĀNGĀVADĀRANA, <i>Sū.</i> 20, 14	Local fissures on the surface of the body
11. ANTARDĀHA, <i>Sū.</i> 20, 14	Burning sensation
12. APATANAKA, <i>Si.</i> 9, 15	Fainting and groaning
13. ARUGI, <i>Ci.</i> 8, 60	Distaste for food
14. ASTHIBHAÑGA, <i>Ci.</i> 25, 68	Fractures
15. ATIDAURBALYA, <i>Sū.</i> 24, 13	Prostration
16. ATIKRŚA, <i>Sū.</i> 20, 10	Extreme emaciation
17. ATISVEDA, <i>Sū.</i> 20, 14	Excessive sweating
18. ATRPTI, <i>Sū.</i> 20, 14	Morbid hunger
19. CHARDI, <i>Ci.</i> 20, 4 (Five different types described according to etiology)	Nausea; vomiting
20. CHINNAŚVASA, <i>Ci.</i> 17, 54	Interrupted breathing
21. DAVATHU, <i>Sū.</i> 20, 14	Acid eructation
22. DĀHA, <i>Sū.</i> 20, 14	Burn
23. DANDAKA, <i>Sū.</i> 20, 11	Convulsion
24. DHŪMODGĀRA, <i>Sū.</i> 20, 14	Gaseous eructation
25. DURMANAS, <i>Sū.</i> 17, 73	Neurasthenia
26. DUṢṭA, <i>Ci.</i> 25, 29	Suppurated condition
27. DVIRETAS, <i>Śā.</i> 2, 17	Hermaphrodite condition
28. GANDAMĀLĀ, <i>Ci.</i> 12, 79	Chain of tumours around the neck

TABLE 14  
*Pathological Conditions and Congenital Defects (contd.)*

Name and reference	Modern name
29. GRIVĀSTAMBHA, <i>Sū. 20</i> , 11	Rigidity of the neck muscles
30. GUDĀRTISYA, <i>Sū. 20</i> , 11	Rectal proctalgia
31. GULPHAGRAHA, <i>Sū. 20</i> , 11	Sprained ankle
32. HANUBHEDA, <i>Sū. 20</i> , 11	Dislocated jaws
33. HARITATVA, <i>Sū. 20</i> , 14	Sallow skin
34. HIKKĀ, <i>Ci. 17</i> , 21 (Five types described according to symptoms)	Hiccup
35. HRDAYOPALEPA, <i>Sū. 20</i> , 17	Excessive secretion of phlegm
36. JIVADĀNA, <i>Sū. 20</i> , 14	Haemorrhage
37. JVARA, <i>Ci. chapter 3</i> (Eight types described according to etiology)	Rise of body temperature
38. KAMPA, <i>Sū. 24</i> , 15	Tremor
39. KANTHALEPA, <i>Sū. 20</i> , 17	Excessive secretion of mucus in throat
40. KARNAKANDU, <i>Ci. 26</i> , 128	Itching inside ears
41. KARNAÑĀDA, <i>Ci. 26</i> , 128	Buzzing sound inside ears
42. KARNAŠŪLA, <i>Ci. 26</i> , 127	Ear-ache
43. KARNAVIDĀHA, <i>Ci. 26</i> , 128	Burning sensation inside ears
44. KAŞĀYĀSYATĀ, <i>Sū. 20</i> , 11	Astringent taste in the mouth
45. KHALLI, <i>Ci. 28</i> , 57	Neuralgic pain in the lower limbs and shoulders
46. KHAÑJATVA, <i>Sū. 20</i> , 11	Lameness
47. KIKKISA, <i>Sā. 8</i> , 32	Burning sensation of the vulva and cracking of local skin
48. LAVANĀSYATĀ, <i>Sū. 24</i> , 14	Saline taste in the mouth
49. LOHITA-GANDHĀSYATĀ, <i>Sū. 20</i> , 14	Metallic taste in the mouth
50. MADA, <i>Sū. 24</i> , 27 (Seven types described according to symptoms or intoxicating agents)	Intoxication
51. MALĀDHIKYA, <i>Sū. 20</i> , 17	Excessive secretion of faecal matter
52. MĀMSADĀHA, <i>Sū. 20</i> , 14	Burning sensation in the muscles
53. MUKHAMĀDHURYA, <i>Sū. 20</i> , 17	Persistent sweet taste in the mouth
54. MUKHAŠOṢA, <i>Sū. 20</i> , 11	Dryness of the palate and tongue
55. MUKHASRĀVA, <i>Sū. 20</i> , 17	Excessive salivation

TABLE 14  
*Pathological Conditions and Congenital Defects (contd.)*

Name and reference	Modern name
56. MŪTRAUKASĀDA, <i>Si.</i> 9, 28	Dense, turbid and coloured urine
57. PĀDAŠŪLA, <i>Sū.</i> 20, 11	Pain in the foot
58. PĀDASUPTATĀ, <i>Sū.</i> 20, 11	Muscular cramps in the leg
59. PICCHANA, <i>Sū.</i> 17, 4	Contusion
60. PLOŠA, <i>Sū.</i> 20, 14	Scorching of the skin
61. PRAMILAKA, <i>Sū.</i> 24, 12	Torpor of the body
62. PR̥THAGRAHA, <i>Sū.</i> 20, 11	Stiffness of the back
63. PŪTIMUKHATĀ, <i>Sū.</i> 20, 14	Foetid smell from the mouth
64. PŪTYĀSYATĀ, <i>Sū.</i> 24, 11	Putrid taste in the mouth
65. RAJONĀŚA, <i>Sū.</i> 20, 11	Suppressed menstrual flow
66. ŠANAIRMEHA, <i>Ni.</i> 4, 10	Excessively slow micturition
67. ŠANDHĪ or ŠANDHAYONI, <i>Ci.</i> 30, 34	Gynandromorph condition in the female
68. SANDRAMEHA, <i>Ni.</i> 4, 10	Viscous urine
69. SANDRAPRASĀDAMEHA, <i>Ni.</i> 4, 10	Sedimented urine
70. ŠEPHASTAMBHA, <i>Sū.</i> 20, 11	Priapism
71. SIKATĀMEHA, <i>Ni.</i> 4, 10	Gravel particles in urine
72. ŠIRORUK, <i>Sū.</i> 20, 11	Headache
73. ŠOŠA, <i>Ni.</i> 6, 11	Atrophied condition
74. ŠOTHA, <i>Ni.</i> 12, 1	Oedema
75. SŪCIMUKHA, <i>Ci.</i> 30, 31	Constriction of the cervix
76. ŠUKRAMEHA, <i>Ni.</i> 4, 10	Passing of semen with urine
77. STAMBHA, <i>Ci.</i> 28, 20	Spastic condition
78. SUPTI, <i>Ci.</i> 27, 16	Cramps or temporary paralysis
79. ŠVAYATHU, <i>Ci.</i> 12, 12 (Six types described according to etiology.)	Swellings
80. SVETABHĀSYATĀ, <i>Sū.</i> 20, 17	Pallor of the skin
81. TAMAHPRAVEŚA, <i>Sū.</i> 20, 14	Total unconsciousness
82. TANDRĀTIYOGA, <i>Sū.</i> 24, 15	Extreme drowsiness
83. TIKTĀMLODGIRANA, <i>Sū.</i> 24, 14	Bitter and acid eructation
84. TIKTĀSYATĀ, <i>Sū.</i> 20, 11	Bitter taste in the mouth

**TABLE 14**  
*Pathological Conditions and Congenital Defects (contd.)*

Name and reference	Modern name
85. TRIKÁGRAHA, <i>Sū. 20</i> , 11	Neuralgic pain in sacral region
86. TVAGDĀHA, <i>Sū. 20</i> , 14	Burning sensation of skin
87. UDAKAMEHA, <i>Ni. 4</i> , 10	Excessive volume of urine
88. UDVṚTTA, <i>Ci. 25</i> , 58	Swelling
89. UPAVEŠTAKA, <i>Śā. 8</i> , 26	Displacement of the foetus
90. USMĀDHIKYA, <i>Sū. 20</i> , 14	Very high temperature
91. VĀGBHAṄGA, <i>Sū. 20</i> , 11	Failing speech
92. VĀMANATVA, <i>Sū. 20</i> , 11	Dwarfness
93. VARTMASAMKOCA, <i>Sū. 20</i> , 11	Retracted eyelids
94. VARTMASTAMBHA, <i>Sū. 20</i> , 11	Rigidity of eyelids
95. VĀTABASTI, <i>Si. 9</i> , 37	Painful retention of urine
96. VĀTIKAṄANDHA, <i>Śā. 2</i> , 21	Eunuch condition in males
97. VEPATHU, <i>Sū. 20</i> , 11	Shivering
98. VIDĀHA, <i>Sū. 10</i> , 95	Suppurated swelling
99. VIJYUTA, <i>Ci. 25</i> , 70	Dislocation
100. VIKŠEPA, <i>Ci. 23</i> , 33	Muscular rigor
101. VIṢA, <i>Ci.</i> chapter 23 (a) ĀMAVIṢA. <i>Ci. 15</i> , 46 (b) GARAVIṢA or DŪŚIVIṢA. <i>Ci. 23</i> , 14 (c) JAṄGAMAVIṢA, <i>Ci. 23</i> , 9 (d) STHĀVARAVIṢA. <i>Ci. 23</i> , 11	Toxicosis; poisoning Food poisoning Poisoning from inorganic substances Poisoning due to bites Poisoning due to vegetable roots and bulbs
102. VIVARNATĀ, <i>Sū. 24</i> , 13	Depigmentation of the skin
103. YONIŚOṢA, <i>Ci. 30</i> , 33	Dryness of the vaginal passage

**TABLE 15**  
*Therapeutical, Surgical, and Chemical Terms*

Name and reference	Modern equivalent
<b>Therapeutical &amp; Surgical Terms</b>	
1. AGNIKARMA, Ci. 25, 101	Cauterization
2. AGNIPARIŠEKA, Ci. 23, 30	Hot fomentation
3. AVAPIDANA, Vi. 6, 16	Massage
4. BHEDANA, Sū. 11, 55	Surgical incision
5. CHEDANA, Sū. 11, 55	Surgical excision
6. DĀRANA, Sū. 11, 55	Surgical rupturing
7. DHŪMAVARTI, Sū. 5, 106	Medicinal cigar
8. EŠANA, Sū. 11, 55	Surgical probing
9. KALPANA, Šā. 8, 44	Use of scalpel to cut through tissues
10. KAVĀLIKĀ-BANDHA, Ci. 25, 69	Cloth bandage
11. MRTASAÑJIVANA, Ci. 23, 36	Reanimation
12. NASYA, Sū. 1, 86	Medication by nasal application
13. PHALAVARTI, Sū. 1, 19	Suppository
14. PICŪ, Šā. 8, 19	Swab
15. PRACCHANNA, Sū. 11, 55	Surgical grafting
16. PRADEHA, Sū. 3, 13	Ointment or balm
17. PRATIVIŠA, Ci. 23, 34	Counter poison or counter-irritant
18. RAKTAMOKŠANA, Ci. 23, 36	Blood-letting
19. RĀŠI, Ni. 5, 22	Medicinal dose
20. SAMJNĀSAMSTHĀPANA, Ci. 23, 36	Resuscitation
21. ŠASTRAKARMAN, Sū. 1, 86	Surgical operation
22. ŠASTRAPRANIDĀNA, Sū. 11, 55	Treatment by surgical methods
23. SIVANA, Sū. 11, 55	Surgical suturing
24. UDVEŠTANA, Vi. 6, 16	Bandaging
25. UPACĀRA, Sū. 9, 8	Nursing
26. UPADHĀNA, Ci. 23, 36	Scalp-incision
27. UPANĀHA, Sū. 1, 96	Poultice
28. UTKRTA, Ci. 25, 29	Inoperable condition of the affected part
29. UTPĀTANA, Sū. 11, 55	Surgical removal of an affected part

TABLE 15  
*Therapeutical, Surgical, and Chemical Terms (contd.)*

Name and reference	Modern equivalent
30. VAMANA, <i>Sū. 7</i> , 15	Emesis
*31. BANDHANA, <i>Sū. 17</i> , 4	Ligature
*32. BASTIKARMA, <i>Sū. 1</i> , 86	Application of enema
33. VENIKA, <i>Ci. 23</i> , 38	Tourniquet
34. VINNĀSANA, <i>Vi. 6</i> , 16	Psychiatric treatment
35. VIRECANĀ, <i>Sū. 7</i> , 15	Purgings
36. VYĀDHANA, <i>Sū. 11</i> , 55	Surgical puncturing

  

<b>Chemical Terms</b>	
1. AMLA, <i>Sū. 6</i> , 11	Acid
2. ATAILA, <i>Ni. 8</i> , 150	Oils other than vegetable oils
3. DHĀTUMALA, <i>Ci. 16</i> , 74	Metallic ores or corroded metals
4. KṢĀRA, <i>Sū. 3</i> , 14	Alkaline substance
5. LAVĀNA, <i>Ci. 10</i> , 44	Salt
6. LOHA, <i>Ci. 25</i> , 103	Metal
7. RĀGA, <i>Ci. 26</i> , 28	Dye
8. SNEHA, <i>Sū. 13</i> , 4	Oil or fat
9. TAILA, <i>Ni. 8</i> , 150	Vegetable oil

\* Nos. 31 and 32 have not been placed in their proper alphabetical order through mistake.

TABLE 16  
*Apparatus and Appliances*  
(Surgical and Physicochemical)

Name and reference	Modern name
1. ARDHADHARA. <i>Sā.</i> 8, 44	Scalpel or knife with handle
2. ĀCAMANIYA. <i>Sū.</i> 15, 7	Spoon of a special shape
3. BHĀNDA. <i>Sū.</i> 15, 7	Beaker or vessel
4. BHRNGĀRA. <i>Sū.</i> 15, 7	Kettle of a special shape
5. CAKRA. <i>Sū.</i> 9, 13	Wheel
6. DARVĪ. <i>Sū.</i> 15, 7	Saucer or basin
7. DHŪMA-NETRA. <i>Sū.</i> 15, 7	Flue
8. DRṢADA. <i>Vi.</i> 7, 22	Stone slab for grinding
9. KALASA. <i>Vi.</i> 7, 22	Pitcher
10. KAṬĀ. <i>Sū.</i> 15, 7	Saucer with handle
11. KUMBHA <i>Vi.</i> 7, 22	Wide-mouth jar
12. KUŚIKA-BANDHA. <i>Ci.</i> 25, 69	Splint
13. MĀNABHĀNDA. <i>Sū.</i> 15, 7	Vessel for measuring volumes
14. MANIKA. <i>Sū.</i> 15, 7	Shallow basin
15. MANTHANA. <i>Sū.</i> 15, 7	Stirrer or stirring rod
16. PITARA. <i>Sū.</i> 15, 7	Pan with handle
17. PRANĀDI. <i>Sā.</i> 14, 44	Tube for insertion into any bodily orifice
18. PUṢPANETRA. <i>Sī.</i> 9, 5	Urethral catheter
19. ŠALAKA. <i>Sī.</i> 9, 50	Metallic probe for surgery
20. ŠALYA. <i>Ci.</i> 13, 184	Surgical instruments
21. SAPIDHANA. <i>Sū.</i> 14, 46	Oven with lid
22. SARAVA. <i>Sū.</i> 15, 7	Elongated bowl
23. TULĀ. <i>Sū.</i> 15, 7	Weighing balance
24. UDAÑCANA. <i>Sū.</i> 15, 7	Covers for vessels
25. UDKOṢṭHA. <i>Sū.</i> 15, 7	Ladle
26. UDUKHALA. <i>Ni.</i> 7, 22	Mortar
27. UTTARA-BASTIKA. <i>Sū.</i> 15, 7	Douche-can
28. YANTRA. <i>Sā.</i> 5, 86	Mechanical appliance

**TABLE 17**  
*Terms for Physicochemical Processes*

Name and reference	Modern equivalent
1. ANTARDHŪMA. <i>Ci.</i> 15, 174	Combustion in closed vessel (internal combustion)
2. AVASIṄCANA. <i>Vi.</i> 7, 25	Moistening
3. AVISAMPLAVANA. <i>Śā.</i> 6, 23	Flushing in a current of liquid
4. BHĀVANA. <i>Vi.</i> 7, 16	Impregnating with liquid
5. BHRṄSTA. <i>Sū.</i> 4, 15	Roasting
6. DĀHANA. <i>Ci.</i> 15, 17	Combustion
7. DRAVA. <i>Śā.</i> 8, 41	Solution
8. GATARASA. <i>Vi.</i> 7, 17	Evaporated residue
9. JARJARIKARANA. <i>Ci.</i> 26, 244	Trituration
10. JUṄA. <i>Ni.</i> 8, 136	Liquid extract
11. JVALANA. <i>Sū.</i> 12, 8/3	Ignition
12. KALKA. <i>Sū.</i> 4, 7	Paste
13. KHEṬABHŪTA. <i>Śā.</i> 4, 9	Coagulated
14. KHINNA. <i>Sū.</i> 27, 254	Boiled
15. LEHA. <i>Vi.</i> 8, 136	Tincture
16. MANTHANA. <i>Vi.</i> 5, 22	Churning
17. MRDUPĀKA. <i>Sū.</i> 27, 275	Mild heating
18. NIṄKĀTHANA. <i>Ci.</i> 15, 174	Evaporation to dryness
19. PARIPŪYANA. <i>Vi.</i> 7, 26	Straining solids from solid-liquid mixtures
20. PĀTANA. <i>Ci.</i> 26, 59	Distillation; precipitation
21. PHĀNTA. <i>Sū.</i> 4, 7	Infusion
22. PHENA. <i>Vi.</i> 7, 23	Foam or froth
23. PHENAMĀLĀ. <i>Ci.</i> 23, 110	Effervescence
24. PIṢTASVEDANA. <i>Ci.</i> 1/1, 58	Steaming of solids
25. PRASĀDA. <i>Ci.</i> 4, 80	Clear supernatant liquid
26. SĀDHANA. <i>Vi.</i> 8, 140	Boiling
27. SAMYOGA. <i>Ni.</i> 5, 22	Chemical combination
28. SĀNDRA. <i>Śā.</i> 6, 16	Viscous
29. ŠAUCA. <i>Vi.</i> 5, 22	Clarification of turbid liquid

TABLE 17  
*Terms for Physicochemical Processes (contd.)*

Name and reference	Modern equivalent
30. SIṄCANA. Šā. 8, 19	Addition of water
31. ŠITIBHŪTA. Vi. 7, 26	Cooled
32. ŠOŚANA. Vi. 7, 22	Desiccation
33. SRTA. Šā. 4, 7	Macerated with liquid
34. SRUTA. Ci. 15, 172	Percolated with water
35. SUKŠMACŪRNA. Vi. 7, 22	Impalpable powder
36. SUPŪTA. Ci. 1/3, 3	Filtered liquid
37. TAILAPRAPIDANA. Vi. 7, 25	Extraction of oily matter
38. UDGHR̄TYA. Šā. 8, 41	Suspension of solids in liquids
39. UPAHITA. Vi. 8, 140	Intimately mixed
40. UPASAMSKARĀNA. Vi. 8, 140	Filtration
41. UPAŠOŚANA. Šā. 12, 8/3	Evaporation
42. UPASVEDANA. Ci. 1/2, 14	A special process of distillation
43. VIGATASNEHA. Vi. 7, 22	Extracted from fatty or oily matter
44. VIRŪKŠANA. Šā. 5, 4	Dehydration

**TABLE 18**  
*Mechanical and Physical Terms*

Name and reference	Modern equivalent
1. AKUÑCANA. <i>Śā.</i> 7, 16	Contraction
2. AVAGĀHANA. <i>Vi.</i> 6, 16	Immersion
3. AVAGHATTANA. <i>Vi.</i> 7, 17	Vigorous stirring
4. AVALEPANA. <i>Vi.</i> 7, 23	Surface coating
5. CUṢANA. <i>Ci.</i> 23, 26	Suction
6. DHĀRANA. <i>Śā.</i> 7, 16	Retention
7. EKĀVARTA. <i>Ci.</i> 23, 109	Spiral
8. GAMANA. <i>Śā.</i> 7, 16	Motion
9. GRAHANA. <i>Ni.</i> 5, 22	Measurement
10. KṢODANA. <i>Vi.</i> 7, 22	Pulverization
11. MĀRGA. <i>Sū.</i> 6, 4	Trajectory or orbit
12. PARICCHĀYĀ. <i>In.</i> 7, 9	Penumbra; aura
13. PARINĀHA. <i>Si.</i> 3, 7	Circumference
14. PARYANTA. <i>Vi.</i> 8, 117	Distance between extreme points
15. PRAPĪDANA. <i>Vi.</i> 7, 25	Rubbing
16. PRASĀRANA. <i>Śā.</i> 7, 16	Expansion
17. PRASTARANA. <i>Vi.</i> 7, 22	Spreading in layer
18. PRERĀNA. <i>Śā.</i> 7, 16	Impulse
19. SANTĀNAGATI. <i>Sū.</i> 12, 8/3	Continuous motion
20. SUṢIRA. <i>Sū.</i> 12, 7	Porous
21. TATTVA. <i>Śā.</i> 1, 55	Reflected image
22. TRIDANDA. <i>Sū.</i> 1, 46	Tripod
23. UNMARDANA. <i>Ni.</i> 6, 16	Abrasion
24. UPĀNGA. <i>Sū.</i> 5, 86	Lubrication
25. VYĀMA. <i>Sū.</i> 14, 43	Unit of length

TABLE 19  
*Weights and Measures*  
(Ka. 12, 87-97)

The smallest unit of weight is that of a *Dhārṣi* (minute particle)

6 DHAMSIS	.. 1 MARICI
6 MARICIS	.. 1 SARṢAPA (Mustard-seed)
8 SARṢAPAS	.. 1 TĀNDULA
2 TĀNDULAS	.. 1 DHĀNYAMAŚA
2 DHĀNYAMĀŚAS	.. 1 YAVA
4 DHĀNYAMĀŚAS	.. 1 ANDIKA
4 ANDIKAS	.. 1 MĀŠAKA or DHĀNYAKA
3 MĀŠAKAS	.. 1 ŚANA
2 ŚANAS	.. 1 DANKṢANA or KOLĀ or VADARA
2 DAṄKṢANAS	.. 1 KARSA or SVARNA or AKSA or PICŪ or VIDĀLAPĀDAKA or PĀNITALA or TIN-DUKA or KAVALAGRAHA
2 KARṢAS	.. 1 ŚUKTI or AŚTAMIKA
4 KARṢAS	.. 1 PALA or MUṢTI or PRĀKUÑCANA or CATURTHIKA or ŚODĀSIKA or ĀMRA
2 PALAS	.. 1 PRASRTA or AŚTAMANA
4 PALAS	.. 1 AṄJALI or KUDAVA
4 KUDAVAS	.. 1 PRASTHA
4 PRASTHAS	.. 1 ĀDAKA or PATRA
8 PRASTHAS	.. 1 KĀMSA
4 KĀMSAS	.. 1 DRONA or CARMANA or NALVANA or KALASA or GHĀTA or UNMANA
2 DRONAS	.. 1 ŚURPA or KUMBHA
2 ŚURPAS	.. 1 GONI or KHĀRI or BHĀRA
32 ŚURPAS	.. 1 VĀHA
Also 100 PALAS	.. 1 TULĀ

Later commentators have equated the *Karṣa* to 2 modern *Tolās*. This makes the *Tulā* equal to 9.33 kilograms.

**TABLE 20**  
*Terms for Physical Properties*  
(Sū. 25, 36; 26, 11)

Name	Modern equivalent
1. DRAVA	Liquid; melt
2. GURU	Heavy
3. KATHINA	Hard; solid
4. KHARA	Rough
5. LAGHU	Light
6. MANDA	Mild, weak
7. MRDU	Soft
8. PICCHILA	Slippery
9. RŪKṢA	Dry
10. SĀNDRA	Viscid
11. SARA	Mobile, fluid
12. ŚITA	Cold
13. ŚLAKṢNA	Smooth, polished
14. SNIGDHA	Oily
15. STHIRA	Firm
16. STHŪLA	Stout
17. SŪKṢMA	Fine
18. TĪKṢNA	Sharp
19. UṢNA	Hot
20. VIŚADA	Scattering

### XIII. BIBLIOGRAPHY

#### MANUSCRIPTS—*Caraka Samhitā*

1. India Office Library (London), MS. No. 338
2. University Library (Tübingen, Germany), MSS. Nos. 458, 459
3. Government of India Oriental MSS. Library (Madras), MS. No. 447
4. Bhandarkar Oriental Research Institute (Poona), MSS. Nos. 64, 67
5. Sanskrit College Library (Calcutta), MSS. Nos. 20, 23, 27
6. Benaras Sanskrit College Library (Benaras), MS. No. 41
7. Palace Library (Alwar), MS. No. 1624
8. Jammu Library (Kashmir), MS. No. 3266
9. Palace Library (Jamnagar)
10. Deccan College Library (Poona), MSS. Nos. 368, 925
11. Punjab University Library (Lahore)
12. Elphinstone College Library (Bombay)

#### PRINTED EDITIONS—*Caraka Samhitā* (TEXT)

1. Edited by Jīvānanda Vidyāśāgara, First edition, Calcutta, 1877; Second edition, Calcutta, 1896.
2. Edited by Kavirāja Gaṅgādhara (complete text with commentary)—*Jalpakalpataru*. Vols. I, II, III. Published by Dhāranidhār Roy, Kaviraj. First edition; Berhampore, Bengal, 1878; Second edition, Calcutta, 1880-81.
3. Edited by Harinātha Viśārada (complete text with Cakrapāṇi Datta's commentary); published by Visharada Ausadhalay; Calcutta, 1892.
4. Edited by Abinash Chandra Kaviratna (incomplete text with Chakrapāṇi Datta's commentary); published by the editor from Jyotish Prakash Jantralaya; Calcutta, 1884-1888.
5. Edited by Jādavaji Trikamji Āchārya (complete text with Chakrapāṇi Datta's commentary); published by Nirnay Sagar Press; Bombay, 1933; Third Edition, Bombay, 1941.
6. Edited by Jyotischandra Saraswati (text incomplete); published by S. K. Saraswati from Indian Press; Benaras, 1937.
7. Edited by Haridatta Sastri (text of Caraka Samhitā with Cakrapāṇi Datta's *Ayurvedadīpikā* with editor's commentary). Published by Motilal Banarsidas; Lahore, 1940-41.
8. Edited by Shree Gulab Kunverba Ayurvedic Society (with introduction, commentary and indices, and with English, Hindi and Guzrati translations). Published by the Society in six volumes. Jamnagar, 1949.

#### COMMENTARIES ON THE *Caraka Samhitā*

1. *Carakanyāsa* by Bhāṭṭāra Haricandra (6th century A.D.). Mentioned in MS. No. 13092 in the Government Oriental MSS. Library, Madras.
2. *Carakapāṇikā* by Ācārya Svāmi Kumāra (6th century A.D.). MS. No. 13091 in Government MSS. Library, Madras; MS. No. R5392 in the Palace Library, Jamnagar.
3. *Nirantarapada* by Jejjata (9th century A.D.). Edited by Haridatta Sastri; printed and published by Motilal Banarsidas; Lahore 1940-41.
4. *Caraka candrikā* by Gayādāsa (10th century A.D.). Mentioned in Dallana's *Nibandhasaṃgraha*.
5. *Ayurvedadīpikā* or *Carakatātparyāṇikā* by Cakradatta (Cakrapāṇi Datta), 11th century A.D.
  - (i) Edited & published by N. N. Sengupta and B. C. Sengupta; Calcutta, 1849-1855.
  - (ii) Edited by Harinath Visarada; Calcutta, 1892.
6. *Carakatatvāpradīpikā* and *Tatvacandrikā* by Śivadāsa Sena (15th century A.D.). MS. No. 47 in the Palace Library, Jamnagar.
7. *Madhukaṣa* by Vijayarakṣita and Śrikanṭha Datta (circa 17th century A.D.); edited by Jadavaji Trikamji Āchārya. Published by Nirnay Sagar Press, Bombay, 1933.
8. *Carakopāṣṭkāra* by Jogindra Nath Sen. Published by the author from the Vidyodaya Press, Calcutta, 1920.

#### TRANSLATIONS

1. Tibetan—date unknown; translator unknown.
2. Persian—earlier than 8th century A. D. This version was retranslated into Arabic by Abdulla-bin-Ali of the 9th century.
3. Arabic—8th or 9th century; translated from original Sanskrit by Ali-ibn-zain; quoted by Al-Biruni.
4. Hindi—by A. S. Sarma, 1903; S. G. Ayurvedic Society, Jamnagar, 1949.
5. English—(incomplete)—by A. C. Kaviratna, 1912.
6. Urdu—by Ayurvedic Pharmacy; Lahore, 1913.
7. Gujarati—by J. D. Dave, 1913; S. G. Ayurvedic Society, Jamnagar, 1949.
8. Bengali—by J. S. Sarkar, 1924.
9. Marathi—by V. P. Krishnasstry, 1926.
10. Telugu—by Vanivilas Press; Madras, 1935.
11. English (complete)—by S. G. Ayurvedic Society; Jamnagar, 1949.

## ERRATA

Page vi, line 27 from the top, <i>for</i> Sciences,	<i>read</i> Sciences
„ 2, „ 19 „ „ „ slokas	„ <i>ślokas</i>
„ 27, „ 5 „ „ „ <i>Jivaniya</i>	„ <i>Jivaniya</i>
„ 30, „ 4 „ „ „ PRASAHI-VARGA	„ PRASAHVA-VARGA
„ 52, „ 17 „ „ „ (column 4) <i>for</i> ringworms „ ringworm,	
„ 88, „ 16 „ „ „ (column 2) „ souredmilk „ soured milk	